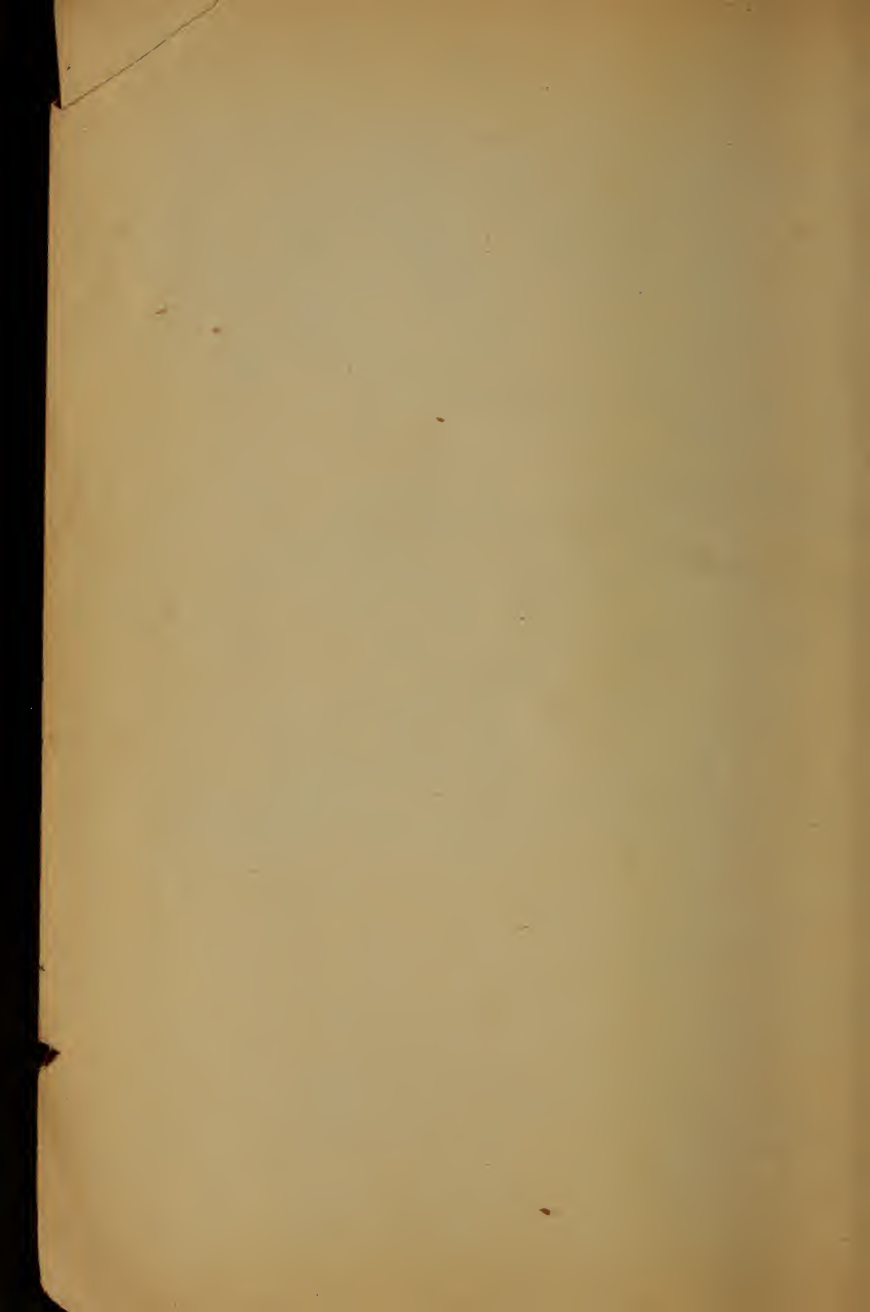


LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

PC 211
Chap. Copyright No.

Shelf W 53

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.



WHITNEY'S MODERN LANGUAGE BOOKS.

FRENCH.

- A FRENCH GRAMMAR. With Exercises and Illustrative Sentences from French Authors. 12mo, 442 pp.
- PRACTICAL FRENCH. Taken from the Author's larger Grammar, and Supplemented by Conversations and Idiomatic Phrases. 12mo, 304 pp.
- BRIEF FRENCH GRAMMAR. 16mo, 177 pp.

GERMAN.

- A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. 12mo, 303 pp.
- BRIEF GERMAN GRAMMAR. 16mo, 143 pp.
- GERMAN READER. 12mo, 523 pp.
- GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. 8vo, 900 pages.
- GERMAN TEXTS. Edited by Prof. W. D. WHITNEY.
- LESSING'S MINNA VON BARNHELM. Annotated by W. D. WHITNEY, Prof. in Yale College. 16mo, 138 pp.
- SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL. Annotated by Prof. A. SACHTLEBEN, of Charleston, S. C. 16mo, 199 pp.
- GOETHE'S FAUST. Annotated by Wm. Cook. 16mo, 229 pp.
- GOETHE'S IPHIGENIE AUF TAURIS. Annotated by Prof. FRANKLIN CARTER, Williams College. 16mo, 113 pp.
- SCHILLER'S MARIA STUART. Annotated by E. S. JOYNES, Prof. in University of South Carolina. 16mo, 222 pp.
- LESSING'S NATHAN DER WEISE. Annotated by H. C. G. BRANDT, Prof. in Hamilton College. 16mo, 158 pp.

WHITNEY-KLEMM GERMAN SERIES.

By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY and L. R. KLEMM.

- GERMAN BY PRACTICE. 12mo, 305 pp.
- ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER. 12mo, 237 pp.

HENRY HOLT & CO., PUBLISHERS, NEW YORK.

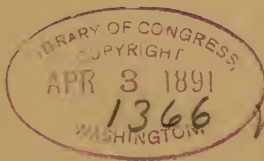
A BRIEF

FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

✓
WILLIAM DWIGHT WHITNEY

PROFESSOR IN YALE UNIVERSITY, AUTHOR OF "PRACTICAL FRENCH
GRAMMAR," "PRACTICAL FRENCH," ETC.



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
F. W. CHRISTERN
BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF

2

PC2111
.W53

COPYRIGHT, 1891,
BY
HENRY HOLT & CO.

ROBERT DRUMMOND,
Electrotypier and Printer,
New York.

PREFACE.

THIS work has been prepared in response to a call for a grammar which should do for French what the author's Brief German Grammar does for German: namely, present the most important facts of the language in the briefest form consistent with accuracy and clearness of statement. Much of the material of this book has been used in the author's larger French Grammar, but the arrangement is here entirely different, the treatment of the irregular verbs especially being much condensed.

The exercises will of course be used by each teacher in accordance with the needs and capacities of his class; but, where an immediate advance to reading is desired, the English-French exercises may with advantage be omitted until the grammar is gone over for the second time. The selected sentences at the end, all of which are taken from the works of French authors of established reputation, will be found of value for further grammatical drill. If a more fully developed set of exercises is desired, they may be found in the author's Practical French.

W. D. W.

NEW HAVEN, December, 1890.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

The references are to sections, except where pages are indicated.

ALPHABET,	§§ 1-3
ACCENTS,	5-10
PRONUNCIATION,	10-70
Vowels, 11-33; nasal vowels, 34-41; consonants, 42-67; linking or carrying on of final consonants, 68-70.	
NOUNS AND ARTICLES,	71-103
Number and gender, 71-74; use of articles, 75-84; plural of nouns, 85; nouns with <i>de</i> and <i>à</i> , 86-94; partitive noun, 95-100; inclusive noun, 101-2; proper names, 103.	
ADJECTIVES,	104-119
Gender and number, 104-109; position, 110-114; comparison, 115-119.	
NUMERALS,	120-129
Cardinals, 120-125; ordinals, 126-129.	
PRONOUNS,	130-182
Personal pronouns, 130-145; possessives, 146-152; demonstratives, 153-158; interrogatives, 159-166; relatives, 167-177; indefinites, 178-182.	
VERBS,	183-228
Simple forms, 183-185; auxiliaries <i>avoir</i> and <i>être</i> , 186-197; principal parts, 198-199; first conjugation, 200-206; second conjugation, 207-208; third conjugation, 209-210; passive verbs, 211-214; reflexive verbs, 215-221; impersonal verbs, 222-226; irregular verbs, 227-228.	

ADVERBS,	§§ 229-234
Adverbs from adjectives, 235-240 ; adverbs of negation, 241-247.	
PREPOSITIONS,	248-254
CONJUNCTIONS,	255-257
SUBJECT AND OBJECT,	258-262
FORMS OF CONJUGATION,	263-285
Indicative tenses, 263-266 ; conditional, 267 ; subjunctive, 268-274 ; imperative, 275 ; infinitive, 276-283 ; participles, 284-285.	
SELECTED SENTENCES,	pages 145-153
FRENCH ENGLISH VOCABULARY,	" 154-167
ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY,	" 169-173
LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS,	" 175-176
INDEX,	" 177-179

LIST OF EXERCISES.

1. Articles and nouns,	page 25
2. Partitive and inclusive uses of noun,	" 30
3. Adjectives,	" 36
4. Comparison of adjectives and numerals,	" 43
5. Personal and possessive pronouns,	" 52
6. Demonstrative and interrogative pronouns,	" 59
7. Relative and indefinite pronouns,	" 65
8. Avoir,	" 72
9. Être,	" 76
10. Verbs of 1st conjugation,	" 84
11. Verbs of 2d and 3d conjugation,	" 90
12. Passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs,	" 98
13-15. Exercises on the most used irregular verbs,	" 115
16. Adverbs and prepositions,	" 128
17. Conjunctions, subject and object, and indicative tenses,	" 134
18. Subjunctive and imperative,	" 139
19. Infinitives and participles,	" 143

LIST OF SETS OF SELECTED SENTENCES.

1. Articles and nouns,	page 145
2. Adjectives and numerals,	" 146
3. Personal and possessive pronouns,	" 146
4. Demonstratives, relatives, interrogatives, and indefi nites,	" 147
5. Passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs,	" 148
6. Adverbs and negative expressions,	" 149
7. Prepositions and conjunctions,	" 150
8. Subject and object,	" 150
9. Tenses of the indicative,	" 151
10. Subjunctive and imperative,	" 151
11. Infinitive and participles,	" 152

A BRIEF FRENCH GRAMMAR.

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

ALPHABET.

1. The French alphabet is the same with the English.

a. But the letters **k** and **w** occur only in a few words, borrowed out of other languages.

2. The letters of the alphabet and their names are as follows (the names pronounced as French words):

a a	h ache	o o	u u
b bé	i i	p pé	v vé
c cé	j ji	q ku	w double vé
d dé	k ka	r erre	x iks
e é	l elle	s esse	y i grec
f effe	m emme	t té	z zèd
g gé	n enne		

a. In reading and spelling, however, it is now common to name each consonant by its own sound followed by a mute **e** (14), which is pronounced only just enough to let the character of the consonant be distinguished : thus, for **b**, **be** instead of **bé**; for **g**, **gue** or **je** (according as the **g** is hard or soft) instead of **gé**; and so on. But when any letter is named by itself, it is always by the name given in the above table.

3. USE OF CAPITALS.—As regards the use of capitals, French agrees in general with English, but with the following important exceptions :

a. An adjective derived from a proper name does not take a capital when used as an adjective, but only when it has the value of a noun.

Thus, *un livre français* *a French book*, but *un Français* *a Frenchman*; *des chevaux américains* *American horses*, but *des Américains* *Americans*.

b. The names of the days of the week and of the months are not written with capitals in French.

Thus, *lundi Monday*, *juin June*.

c. The word for *I*, namely *je*, is not written with a capital.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

4. The rules as to how a French word is to be divided into syllables are of much practical importance in their bearing on the mute *e* and on the nasal vowels.

a. A single consonant between vowels always belongs to the following vowel.

Thus, *fi-ni*, *ai-me-rai*, *dé-cou-ra-ger*, *gé-né-reu-se-ment*, *i-ni-mi-ta-bi-li-té*.

b. Also two consonants, if they are such as may begin a French word, belong to the following vowel.

Thus, *a-près*, *ré-gler*, *a-bri*, *é-clos*, *a-droit*, *trè-fle*, *ou-tre*, *ou-vris*.

c. A consonant digraph, or group of two consonants representing a single sound, is treated as if one consonant

only; such are **ch**, **ph**, **th**, **gn** : thus, **a-che-ter**, **pro-phé-ti-e**, **pa-thé-ti-que**, **a-gneau**.

ACCENTS AND OTHER ORTHOGRAPHIC MARKS.

5. Three accent-marks are used in French, and constitute a part of the necessary written form of French words. They are the ACUTE ACCENT, as in **été**, **créé** ; the GRAVE ACCENT, as in **dès**, **là**, **où** ; and the CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT, as in **pâte**, **fête**, **île**, **hôte**, **fûtes**.

6. The CEDILLA is a mark placed under a **c** (thus, **ç**), to give it its soft or *s*-sound before the vowels **a**, **o**, **ù** (where it would otherwise be pronounced hard, like *k*) : thus, **plaça**, **façon**, **reçu**, **ç'a**.

7. The DIÆRESIS (Fr. **tréma**) is a double dot, set (as sometimes also in English) over a vowel which is to be pronounced separately from a preceding vowel, not forming with it a diphthong : thus, **haïr** (i.e. *ha-ir*), **ouï** (i.e. *ou-i*).

8. The APOSTROPHE shows, as in English, the loss of a final vowel which has been cut off before another vowel : thus, **l'ami**, **s'il**.

a. The vowel thus cut off is almost always **e** ; but in a few cases it is **a** or **i**.

9. The HYPHEN is used, as in English, but more frequently and strictly, between parts of words, and whole words regarded as having an especially close connection with one another. The cases where it is required will be stated below.

ACCENT.

10. *a.* The actual accent, or stress of voice on one of the syllables of a word of two or more syllables, rests in French on the last syllable that is fully pronounced—i.e. that does not have as its vowel a mute *e*.

Thus, *palais'*, *mala'de*, *maladroit'*, *maladroi'te*, *mélan-coli'e*, *indubita'ble*, *réconcilier'*, *réconciliè'rent*, *indivisibilité'*.

b. But the stress of voice is very slight. In general, the syllables of a French word (except those containing a mute *e*) are uttered with equal distinctness and nearly even stress.

c. This evenness of utterance, and equal distinctness of vowel sound in all the syllables of a word, is one of the most striking peculiarities of French pronunciation as compared with English, and cannot be too much insisted on and practised.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

11. QUANTITY.—There is no strongly-marked distinction of long and short vowels in French, such as there is in English (and in German). French vowels are in general short, though sometimes a little prolonged—oftenest before a final pronounced *r*, and when circumflexed.

12. *A, a.*—This vowel has nearly the open sound of English *a* in *far* or *father*; but it is generally a little flattened, like English *a* in *flat*, *cap*, *jack*, only not quite so much so: thus, *ira*, *la*, *a*, *plat*, *drap*, *car*, *ami*, *animal*, *malade*, *place*.

13. **E, e.**—This vowel has in French a greater variety of written form and of pronunciation than any other, being written as *e, é, è, ê*, and pronounced with a mute, a closer, and an opener sound.

14. **MUTE OR SILENT e.**—*a.* A simple *e* (one without accent-sign) standing at the end of a syllable has the so-called “mute” or “silent” value (*e muet*): that is, it is pronounced as briefly and lightly as possible, and what sound it has is like that of English *u* in *hut* or *hurt*.

b. The sound is quite precisely that in English *the* before a consonant in real colloquial utterance: thus, “tell us *the* name of *the* man.” Examples are *le, me, de, te-nir, regard, re-gar-de, re-le-va, ra-me-na, en-ne-mi*. In many situations—especially at the end of a word of more than one syllable, as *table, rare, machine, abortive*—it is in ordinary utterance entirely silent; but still it makes theoretically a syllable (thus, *ra-re, ma-chi-ne, a-bor-ti-ve*), which counts as such in poetry, and in singing must be uttered as much as any other syllable. In learning French pronunciation, the pupil must first be able to give the right sound to the vowel, and then duly to slight or omit it.

c. The same sound belongs also to the *e* of *es* at the end of a word (excepting in the monosyllables *les, des, ces, mes, tes, ses*), and to that of *ent* at the end of the 3d pers. plural of a verb: thus, *rares, machines, certes, donnees, donnent, regardent, donnassent*.

d. The *e* of *je, I*, when following the verb, is completely silent, in the same manner as at the end of a word of more than one syllable: thus, *ai-je, have I?* pronounced as if written *aige*; *suis-je, am I?* as if *suige*; and so on.

15. The acute and grave accents, as used on *e*, are signs giving it a full pronunciation where otherwise it would be mute. No *é* or *è* is ever written unless without the accent the *e* would

(by the rules of the preceding paragraph) have its mute value.

16. As between the acute and grave, the general rule is that the grave is written if a next following syllable in the same word is a mute one ; otherwise, the acute.

Thus, *pè-re*, *chè-re*, *lè-ve*, *cè-de*, *mè-ne-rai*, *pè-le-rin*, but *cé-der*, *cé-da*, *cé-dé*, *cé-lé-bri-té* ; and *dé-cè-de*, *cé-lè-bre*, *cé-lè-brent*, *pré-fè-res*, *té-nè-bres*.

17. It is to be noted that the occurrence of two successive mute syllables in the same word is generally avoided. Thus, no word is ever composed of, or ends in, two mute syllables ; nor do two often come together in the middle of a word ; at the beginning they are not quite so rare (especially when *re* or *de* is prefixed to a verb already beginning with a mute syllable, as *venir*, *revenir*, *devenir*, and even *redevenir*). And no word ever begins with a mute *e*.

a. Hence, such words as *leve*, *mene*, *chere*, *complete*, *appeles*, *menes*, *cheres*, or (as 3d pl. of a verb) *levent*, *menent*, are impossible in French ; and wherever they would occur in the regular processes of word-formation or inflection, the concurrence of the two mute syllables is avoided by giving a full pronunciation to the first. This is oftenest done by writing the grave accent over it : thus, *lève*, *mène*, *chère*, *complète*, *mènes*, *mènent*—but sometimes by doubling the consonant (if it be *l* or *n* or *t*) instead : thus, *belle* (*bel-le*), *appelles*, *sienne*, *prennent* (3d pl.), *nette*.

18. The *e* with acute accent, or *é*, has the sound of English so-called “long *a*,” in *day* and *they*, and the like (yet without the vanishing

sound of “long e,” with which our “long a” usually ends). It is called the close e (*e fermé*).

19. The e with grave accent, or è, has an opener sound, nearly like our “short e,” in *ebb*, *send*, and the like; and it even in some cases, especially before a following r, approaches our still opener sound of e in *there* and the like. It is called the open e (*e ouvert*).

20. The e with circumflex accent, or ê, has the open sound, like è.

21. An e that is followed by a consonant in the same syllable (whether that consonant be pronounced or silent) is not mute, but has either the closer sound of é or the opener of è.

22. E in a few words has an irregular pronunciation :

a. It is pronounced as an a would be, before n and m, in *femme* woman, *solennel* solemn and its derivatives, and adverbs ending in *-emment*, and a few other words.

b. It is sometimes used after g merely as a device for showing that the g is to have its soft sound, being itself not pronounced : thus, *mangeai*, *mangeons*, *gageure*.

c. The final mute e of a monosyllable is generally cut off before a vowel, and replaced by an apostrophe.

23. I, i.—The vowel i has in French always the sound (as regards quality) of English “long e,” or of i in the words *machine*, *pique*.

Thus, *il*, *ri*, *vite*, *ici*, *midi*, *défini*, *divisé*, *visibilité*.

24. O, o.—a. The vowel o has in general the sound of the English o in *note* (but without the vanishing sound of oo, in which the English “long o” usually ends).

It is so pronounced especially when it is circumflexed, or is the final sound of a word : thus, *côte, nôtre, rôle, trône, mot, cachot, trop, nos.*

b. But in many words *o* has an opener sound, approaching that of English *o* in *not* (or midway between that and the *o* of *come*); and before a final *r*-sound it comes near to our *o* in *nor*.

Thus, *robe, mode, Rome, dogue, école, dorer, notre, porter, occuper, modeste; and or, mort, corps.*

25. *U, u.*—The French *u* has a sound unlike anything in English (but precisely agreeing with that of the German “modified *u*,” or “*u* with *umlaut*,” written *ü*). It is produced by a combination of that position of the tongue with which *ee* (as in *meet*) is made with that position of the lips with which *oo* (as in *moot*) is made. Fix the tongue, then, to say *ee*, and, without moving it, round the lips as if to say *oo*, and the product is the sound desired.

Thus, *vu, dû, nul, pure, sûre, sucre, minute, fêrûle, occuper, multitude, minuscule.*

a. *U* is generally silent after *q* ; for the exceptions, see under *q*.

b. *U* is also regularly silent after *g*, when itself followed by another vowel. usually *e* or *i*, except when the following *e* or *i* has the diæresis : thus, *guerre, guide, langue, longueur, fatigue, fatigué, voguer, vogua, vogueurs.*

26. *Y, y.*—The sound of *y*, when it is the vowel of a syllable, is the same with that of *i* : thus, *y, style, système, syllabe, physique, Yves.*

27. *A y* between two vowels has the value of double *i*, or *i-i*, one of the *i*'s belonging to the

vowel of the preceding syllable, the other (as a brief *y*-like prefix) to that of the following syllable.

Thus, *essay*er is pronounced as if written *essai-ier*; *appuyer*, as if *appui-ier*; *envoyer*, as if *envoi-ier*; and so on.

a. The same value belongs to the *y* in *pays* (pronounced as if written *pai-is*), and its derivatives *paysage*, *paysan*.

b. A *y* is not allowed as final, nor in general before mute *e*; and, both in derivation and in inflection, the interchange of *i* and *y*, according as final or not, and as a mute *e* or any fully pronounced vowel follows, is very common: thus, *joie*, *joyeux*; *roi*, *royal*; *aie*, *ayons*, *ayez*, *aient*; *appuie*, *appuies*, *appuyons*, *appuyez*, *appuient*; and so on.

28. There are a few very common combinations of two vowels (or three), which represent for the most part simple sounds, but which are commonly called diphthongs; they are *ai* and *ei*, *au* (and *eau*), *eu* (and *œu*), *ou*, and *oi*.

a. It is to be noticed that real diphthongal sounds, like those in English *file*, *foul*, *foil*, are altogether wanting in French.

29. *Ai* and *ei*.—These compounds have no other sounds than those of *e* when not mute, or of *é* or *è*.

30. *Au* and *eau* are pronounced as *o* would be in the same situation.

Thus, *au*, *eau*, *beau*, *beauté*, *tombeau*, *chevaux*, *aurai*, *Maure*.

31. *Eu* has a peculiar sound, nearly like that of English *u* in *fur*, *hurt* (or nearly like German *ö*). It is opener in *jeune*, *leur*, *aveugle*, etc.; and closer in *jeûne*, *neutre*, *heureux*, *feu*, *veux*, etc.

32. *Ou*.—The combination *ou* is everywhere pronounced like English *oo*, in *pool*, *boon*, etc.

Thus, *ou*, *où*, *cou*, *bout*, *hiboux*, *coupe*, *source*, *courte*, *joujou*, *douloureux*.

33. *Oi*.—The combination *oi*, which is extremely common in French, is everywhere pronounced like the English *wa* in *was* (not with the broader sound of *wa* in *water*).

Thus, *moi*, *soi*, *foi*, *oiseau*, *toile*, *ploie*, *cloître*, *crois*, *trois*, *adroite*, *froideur*, *proie*.

NASAL VOWELS.

34. If a vowel, simple or compound, is followed in the same syllable by *n* or *m*, the *n* or *m* loses its separate pronunciation, and the vowel itself is made nasal.

a. A nasal vowel is one that is pronounced partly through the mouth and partly through the nose : that is, while the mouth-organs are fixed as in the utterance of an ordinary vowel, the passage from the mouth into the nose is also opened, so that a part of the expelled air goes through the nose and resounds there, giving a nasal twang to the vowel-tone. Beginners may help accustom themselves to recognize and produce this nasal twang by shutting the nose with the fingers, in which case the nasality becomes especially loud and conspicuous.

b. In learning to pronounce the nasal vowels, the fault especially to be avoided is the shutting of the mouth-organs after the vowel-sound, so as to end it with anything like an *n* or *ng*-sound. A habit of so doing, if once formed, is extremely hard to get rid of. Better than this is to leave the vowel at first unnasalized, hoping to learn by degrees to give it the right quality.

35. There are in French four nasal vowels, or nasalized vowel-sounds. They are very nearly

those heard in the English words *wan*, *song*, *sang*, and *sung*, or *on*, *pawn*, *pan*, and *pun*—as these would be if the *n*- and *ng*-sounds in them were not separately uttered, but had their nasal tone as it were absorbed into the vowel itself.

36. The nasalized vowel-sound of English *wan* or *on* belongs in French to *an* and *am*, and to *en* and *em*.

Thus, *an*, *pan*, *banc*, *quand*, *lance*, *manger*, *ébranler*, *banquet*, *anse*, *ayant*, *vanter*; *camp*, *lampe*, *ample*, *chambre*; *en*, *dent*, *enfant*, *pente*, *prudence*, *genre*; *temps*, *trempe*, *remplir*, *membre*, *emblème*.

37. The nasalized vowel-sound of English *pawn* or *song* belongs in French to *on* and *om*.

Thus, *on*, *non*, *donc*, *long*, *plonge*, *annonce*, *conter*, *ronde*; *nom*, *plomb*, *tomber*, *romps*, *rompre*, *combler*, *comte*. So also *action* and the like.

38. *a*. The nasalized vowel-sound of English *sang* or *pan* belongs in French especially to *in* and *im*.

Thus, *vin*, *vint*, *vinrent*, *vinssse*, *pincer*, *Inde*, *ingrat*; *imbu*, *timbre*, *simple*, *impur*.

b. The same sound belongs to the compound vowels *ai* and *ei* with following *n* or *m*.

Thus, *sain*, *sainte*, *craindre*; *faim*, *essaim*; *sein*, *serein*, *peindre*, *peinture*.

c. The *oi* of *oin* has not its ordinary value, but the *in* of it has the regular nasal sound of *in*, to which the *o* gives a prefix like a *w*. Thus, *loin*, *moins*, *ointe*, *oindre*, *joindre*, *accointance*.

d. Final *en* after *i* (or *y*), and *en* everywhere after *i* in the forms of the verbs *tenir* and *venir*, has the sound of *in*: thus, *rien*, *bien*, *sien*, *moyen* (pronounced as *moi-ien*), *tiens*, *viendra*.

39. The nasalized vowel-sound of *sung* or *pun* belongs in French to *un*, *um*, and *eun*.

Thus, *un*, *brun*, *tribun*, *défunt*, *lundi*, *emprunter* ; *parfum*, *humble* ; *jeun*.

40. If the *n* or *m* is followed by a vowel, the preceding vowel is of course not nasal, because the *n* or *m* is not in the same syllable with it.

Thus, *tenir*, *semer*, *honorer*, *une*, *inutile* (divided *te-nir*, *ho-no-rer*, *i-nu-ti-le*, etc.) ; also *inhumain*, *inhabité*, etc. (the *h* being silent, and not counting as a consonant : see 50c).

a. But in *enivrer* and *enorgueillir* and their derivatives the *e* is nasal.

41. Also when the *n* or *m* is doubled, the preceding vowel is not nasal.

Thus, *année*, *hébamme*, *tienne*, *ennemi*, *femme*, *lionne*, *homme*, *innocent*, *immoler*.

a. But in *ennui* and its derivatives, in *ennoblir*, also in *emmener*, and most other words beginning with *emm* (from *en-m*), the *e* is nasal.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

42. GENERAL RULES.—*a.* Final consonants, either one or more than one, are in general silent at the end of a French word.

Thus, *pied*, *trop*, *les*, *fait*, *prix*, *maux*, *nez* ; *plomb*, *rand*, *pieds*, *draps*, *romps*, *faits*, *doigt*, *vingt*, *vents*, *vends*, *instincts*.

b. But final *c*, *f*, *l*, and *r* are usually pronounced.

Thus, *sec*, *avec*, *tic*, *bloc*, *suc*, *turc* ; *fief*, *vif*, *neuf* ; *bal*, *cruel*, *vol*, *seul* ; *par*, *fer*, *finir*, *or*, *sur*, *martyr*.

43. **B, b.**—The letter *b* is pronounced as in English.

Thus, *beau*, *bien*, *robe*, *barbier*, *bombe*, *subtil*.

44. **C, c.**—This consonant has in French, as in English, two sounds : a soft sound, like *s* ; and a hard sound, like *k*.

As to **ch**, see the next paragraph.

a. **C** is soft before *e* and *i* (or *y*), and the compound vowels in which *e* or *i* is first (*ei*, *eu*, *ie*).

Thus, *ce*, *ceci*, *ici*, *placé*, *procès*, *douce*, *ceint*, *ceux*, *adoucie*, *ciel*, *cymbale*.

b. In all other situations—before other vowels, before consonants, and as final—*c* has its hard sound.

Thus, *car*, *caisse*, *cause*, *col*, *cœur*, *cour*, *curé*, *cuir* ; *croc*, *clair* ; *lac*, *sec*, *tic*, *roc*, *duc*.

c. **C** is soft also before *a*, *o*, *u*, if it has the cedilla : thus, *plaça*, *plaçons*, *reçu*.

d. The *c* of *second* and its derivatives is pronounced like *g*.

e. Final *c* (usually pronounced : 42*b*) is silent after a nasal vowel : thus, *blanc*, *vainc* ; also after *r* in *clerc*, *porc*, etc. ; and in *estomac*, *tabac*, *broc*, *croc*, and a few other words.

45. **Ch, ch.**—This combination has in French regularly and usually the sound of English *sh*, or *ch* in *machine*.

Thus, *chasse*, *chaise*, *chaud*, *chez*, *cochon*, *choux*, *choix*, *chute*, *chuinte*, *hâche*, *recherche*, *chuchoter*, *ponche*.

a. But there are many words of foreign origin (chiefly Greek) in which **ch** has the sound of *k*. Thus, always before a consonant, as *Christ*, *chrétien*, *chronique*, *technologie*, *chloral*, *fuchsia*, *yacht* ;—but often also before a vowel, as in *archange*, *chœur*, *orchestre*, *écho*, and other less common words ; and in proper names, as *Chaldée*, *Bacchus*, *Antiochus*, *Moloch*, *Munich*, *Michel-Ange*.

46. **D, d.**—This consonant is pronounced as in English.

Thus, *de*, *des*, *dédire*, *dindon*, *droit*, *guide*, *mode*, *poudre*, *plaindre*.

47. **F, f.**—This consonant is pronounced as in English.

Thus, *faux, feu, fou, fleur, froid, fief, sauf, affaire, forfait, serf, neuf.*

a. Final **f** (usually pronounced : 42*b*) is silent in *clef key*, in the *chef* of *chef-d'œuvre*, in the plurals *œufs, bœufs, nerfs* (though pronounced in the singular of these words). Also the **f** of *neuf nine* is silent before an initial consonant of a word numbered by it : thus, *neuf livres, neuf cents* (not in *le neuf janvier Jan. 9th, neuf par an nine a year*, etc.).

48. **G, g.**—This consonant has in French, as in English, two sounds : a soft sound, like English *z* in *azure* or *s* in *pleasure* ; and a hard sound, like English *g* in *gig*.

a. **G** has its soft sound before the vowels *e, i, y*.

Thus, *gelé, gèle, génie, geindre, orageux, gilet, bougie, gymnase.*

b. In other situations—before any other vowel than *e, i, y*, and before a consonant—**g** has its hard sound.

c. In order to preserve the soft sound of a **g**, when in the changes of inflection or derivation it would come to stand before **a** or **o** or **u**, an **e** (not itself pronounced) is often written after it : thus, from *manger* come *mangeant, mangeons, mangeure.*

49. The combination **gn** has in general a peculiar liquid sound, nearly like English *ny* in *lanyard* or *ni* in *union*.

Thus, *gagner, régner, règne, ligne, cicogne, répugne, cygne, magnifique, ignorant, rognon, seigneur.*

50. **H, h.**—This consonant is not pronounced in French ; no such sound as the English *h* should ever be heard in any French word.

a. But there is a considerable number of words in which an initial *h*, though now silent, is treated as if it were still pronounced—namely, by the absence before it of the elision (22*c*), of the carrying-on of a final consonant (68), etc. Such an initial *h* is called “aspirate *h*,” the other being called, for distinction, “mute or silent *h*.”

b. Initial aspirate *h* is generally marked in the dictionaries with an inverted apostrophe—thus, ‘*haie*, ‘*héros*, ‘*honte*, etc.; and the same method will be followed in this work in the vocabularies.

c. The silent initial *h* is treated as if it had no existence, or as if the word actually began with the following vowel; the aspirate initial *h* is treated like any other consonant.

Thus, *l’homme* like *l’ombre*, *cet homme* like *cet ombre*, *son heure* like *son euphonie*, etc.; but, *le hasard*, *ce héros*, *sa harpe*, etc.

51. *J, j.*—This consonant has in French invariably the sound of English *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure* (the same as soft *g*: 48*a*).

Thus, *jamais*, *je*, *jeu*, *joie*, *joujou*, *juge*, *juif*.

52. *K, k.*—This consonant occurs in French only in a few borrowed words; it has the sound of English *k*.

Thus, *kilomètre*, *képi*, *kermesse*, *kiosque*.

a. The *k*-sound is represented in French words by *c* hard (44), by *ch* (45), and by *qu* (58*a*).

53. *L, l.*—This consonant, except when liquid, is pronounced in French as in English.

Thus, **le**, **la**, **lilie**, **loi**, **lui**, **lucre**, **lamelle**, **folle**, **nul**, **table**, **boucle**, **souffle**, **ébranle**, **simple**, **hurle**.

54. An **l** following **i** in the same syllable is generally made liquid—that is, it is pronounced as a close *y*.

Thus, **cil**, **babil**, **mil**, **millet**, **avril**, **péril**, **grésil**, **fille**, **cédille**, **billard**, **artillerie**, **guillotine**, **barbillon**.

a. If the **l** before **l** is preceded by another vowel, simple or compound, that vowel has its own sound, not forming a compound with the **i**, the latter's sole office being to show the liquid sound of the **l**: thus, **travail**, **travailler**, **conseil**, **conseiller**, **vieil**, **vieillir**, **seuil**, **feuille**, **feuillage**, **houille**, **houilleur**. And **ue** (after **c** or **g**) and **œ** before liquid **il** have the sound of **eu**: thus, **accueil**, **orgueil**, **œil**.

b. But final **l** is silent after **i** in a number of words. The commonest of these are: **baril** *barrel*, **fusil** *gun*, **outil** *tool*, **sourcil** *eyebrow*; also **l** in **fil** *son*, and the plural **genstilshommes** *gentlemen* (in **gentilhomme** it is liquid; also in **gentil** *nice*, except at the end of a sentence or when followed by a consonant, when it is silent).

c. Final **l** has the proper **l**-sound after **i** in a number of words: thus, **il** *he*, **fil** *thread*, **mil** *thousand*, **Nil** *Nile*, **vil**, **civil**, **exil**, **profil**, **subtil**, **viril**, **puéril**, **volatil**; further, according to the more usual pronunciation, in **cil**, **avril**, and **péril** (pronounced also with liquid or with silent **l**).

d. At the beginning of a word, **il** is not liquid: thus, **illatif**, **illégal**, **illimité**, **illogique**, **illustre**.

e. Double **l** after **i** has the full **l**-sound also in the interior and at the end of a number of words: thus, **ville** *town*, **mille** *thousand*, **tranquille**, **pupille** *ward*, **distiller** *distil*, **vaciller** *vacillate*, **pusillanime**, **axillaire** *axillary* (with their compounds and derivatives), and a few others.

55. **M**, **m**.—Except where it makes the preceding vowel nasal, and is itself not pronounced (34 etc.), **m** has the same sound in French as in English.

Thus, *me, ma, même, moi, meurt, mûr, femme, homme, immémoré, hymne.*

56. **N, n.**—Except where it makes the preceding vowel nasal, and is itself not pronounced (34 etc.), *n* has the same sound in French as in English.

Thus, *nappe, naine, ne, neuf, nid, non, noir, nouveau, nul, nuire, bonne, brune.*

57. **P, p.**—This consonant is in general pronounced as in English.

Thus, *pape, père, peuple, pourpre, pur, puits, plaire, pré, frapper, huppe, soupe.*

a. *p* is silent before *t* in *sept, septième, baptême, computer* and a few other words.

58. **Q, q.**—This consonant is almost always followed in French, as in English, by *u*; but in French the *u* is generally silent, and the combination *qu* has the sound of *k*.

Thus, *quatre, quai, que, queue, quelque, qui, quint, quotidien, quoique, calquer, vainquis, vainquons.*

a. A hard *k*-sound before *e* or *i* cannot be written in French except by *qu*; and hence *qu* sometimes takes the place of *c* in inflection and derivation when *e* or *i* is added: thus, *vainquez, vainquent, vainquis, from vaincre; turque, from turc; caduque, from caduc.*

b. But in a number of French words *qu* has the same sound as in English: thus, *quadrat, équestre.*

59. **R, r.**—This consonant is always more or less rolled or trilled in French, and so is made much more distinct than in ordinary English pronunciation.

Thus, *rare, frère, rire, parure, roi, trois, croix, partir, porteur, arbre, meurtre, bruit, grand, près, vrai, arri-verai.*

a. A final **r** is regularly pronounced (42*b*); but it is usually silent after **e** in words of more than one syllable.

Thus, silent in **fier** (verb), **aimer**, **parler**, **léger**, **entier**, **officier**, etc.; pronounced in **cher**, **fer**, **fier** (adj.), **hier**, **mer**, etc., and, before other silent finals, in **clerc**, **perd**, **perds**, **cerf**, **tiers**, **sert**, etc.

b. Final **r** is also pronounced after **e** in the words of more than one syllable, **amer** *bitter*, **cancer**, **cuiller** *spoon*, **enfer** *hell*, **hiver** *winter*, and a few foreign words, chiefly proper names, as **magister**, **Jupiter**, **Esther**.

c. Final **r** is silent in **monsieur**, **messieurs**.

d. In the future and conditional of the verbs **courir** *run*, **mourir** *die*, **quérir** *ask*, and their compounds, the double **r** is distinctly to be heard as two separate **r**'s: thus, **courrai**, **mourrais**, **acquerront**.

60. S, s.—This consonant is in general pronounced with the sound which it ordinarily has in English (in our words *sense*, *sister*, etc.).

Thus, **sa**, **se**, **si**, **son**, **sur**, **espace**, **estime**, **poste**, **prisme**, **fiasque**, **disparu**, **descriptif**, **transcrire**, **anse**, **penser**.

a. But **s** between two vowels has the sound of our *z*.

Thus, **raser**, **raison**, **lèse**, **misère**, **rose**, **blouse**, **ruse**; also **déshonneur** (silent **h**), **déshabiller**, etc.

b. **S** final is regularly silent (42); but it is sounded in **fil** *son*, **mœurs** *morals*, **tous** *all* (except when followed by a word with which it agrees), and some others.

c. A double **s**, or **ss**, is pronounced like a single **s**, but always with the hissing *s*-sound, never as *z*: thus, **assez**, **bless**, **disse**, **grosse**, **pouss**, **prussien**, **vins**.

61. T, t.—This consonant is generally sounded as in English.

Thus, **ta**, **taire**, **taux**, **tâter**, **te**, **tête**, **titre**, **ton**, **toute**, **tuteur**, **nette**, **trottoir**, **étroite**.

a. Final **t** is regularly silent (42*a*); but it is pronounced in a number of words: as in **dot dowry**, **net neat**, **huit eight** and **sept seven** (except before an initial consonant of a word numbered by them), **vingt twenty**, in the numbers from 21–29, etc.

62. *a.* **T** followed by **i**, in certain endings where *ti* in English has the *sh*-sound, is sounded as *s*: thus, **partial**, **ambitieux**, **patience**; also, in such cases as **démocratie** (*-cy*), **inertie** (*-tia*), **initier** (*-tiate*).

b. But where the **ti** is preceded by **s** or **x** (and *ti* has in English the *ch*-sound), **t** retains its proper value: thus, **question**, **mixtion**. The same is the case in **chrétien** and in **châtier**.

63. The combination **th** is everywhere pronounced as simple **t**: thus, **théâtre**, **thé**, **pathétique**, **athéiste**, **sympathie**. It is silent in **asthme** and **isthme**.

64. **V, v**.—This consonant is sounded as in English. It never occurs as final.

Thus, **valu**, **veuve**, **vivant**, **vol**, **voir**, **vrai**, **active**, **vivre**.

65. **W, w**.—This consonant occurs only in a very small number of foreign words. It is usually pronounced like English *v*: thus, **wagon**; but in a word or two rather as English *w*: thus, **whist**, **whig** (the **h** silent).

66. **X, x**.—This consonant is for the most part pronounced like *ks*, as in English.

Thus, **saxe**, **sexe**, **fixer**, **boxeur**, **luxe**, **Alexandre**, **annexation**, **exciter**, **excuse**, **expérience**.

a. In the initial syllable **ex** before a vowel. **x** is pronounced like *gz*: thus, **exalté**, **exemple**, **exister**, **exil**, **exode**, **exhorter**, **exhumer** (**h** silent). Initial **x** has in most words the same *gz*-sound: thus, **Xénophon**, **Xavier**. **Xerxès** is pronounced *gzersesse*.

b. Final **x** is regularly silent (42*a*); but it is pronounced, like *s*, in the numerals **six six**, and **dix ten** (except before an initial consonant of a word numbered by them), in **dix-sept seventeen**, **Béatrix**, **Cadix**, **Aix en Provence**; in **Aix-la-Chapelle** it is pronounced like *ks*, also in a few foreign words. In the compound numerals **dix-huit eighteen** and **dix-neuf nineteen**, is sounded as *z*.

c. Medial **x** is sounded as *s* (not *z*) in *soixante sixty*, and in a few proper names, as **Bruxelles**, **Auxerre**; and as *z* in *deuxième second*, *sixième sixth*, *dixième tenth*, *sixaine half a dozen*.

67. **Z, z**.—This consonant has in general the same sound as in English.

Thus, **Zama**, **zèle**, **zigzag**, **zone**, **zymotique**, **gazon**.

LINKING OR CARRYING-ON OF FINAL CONSONANTS.

68. A final consonant usually silent is liable to be pronounced when followed by another word beginning with a vowel (or mute *h*). This is called the linking or carrying-on of the final (in French, *liaison*).

a. The final consonant thus carried on is pronounced directly upon the following vowel, as if a part of the same syllable with it; any relaxation or pause is to be made before the consonant, not between it and the vowel.

b. The carrying-on of the final in any case depends upon the closeness of connection between the two words, and also in part upon the general style of utterance.

69. Final *s* and *x*, when linked, take the sound of *z*; *d* takes that of *t*; and *g* (rare) takes that of *k*.

Thus, *les hommes*, *nos amis ont*, *nous aurons eu*, *pas encore*, *sans elle*; *deux hommes*, *de beaux yeux*, *des chapeaux énormes*, *tu peux y aller*; *un grand homme*, *vend il*, *quand il vient*, *pied à terre*; *un rang élevé*, *ce long hiver*, *le joug insupportable*. But the *d* of *nord* keeps its *d*-sound.

70. Special exceptional cases are to be noted as follows :

a. The *t* of *et and* is never carried on.

b. A final consonant after *r* (unless it be the plural sign *s*) is averse to linking : thus, *vers une heure, hors un seul, il ne sert à rien* (but *sert-il*).

c. The final *n* of a nasal syllable is carried on only in cases of close grammatical connection ; and when the carrying-on takes place, the preceding vowel loses more or less (sometimes all) of its nasal tone, while retaining the same vowel-quality as in its nasal utterance : thus, *un-enfant, mon-ami, ce bon-homme, en-Italie, bien-aimable, rien-à dire, en plein-air, enivrer, enorgueillir*.

NOUNS AND ARTICLES.

NUMBER AND GENDER.

71. There are in French, as in English, two numbers, singular and plural.

72. There are two genders, masculine and feminine. Every noun is either masculine or feminine.

73. For the most part French gender corresponds to Latin, a French noun taking the gender of the Latin noun from which it is derived.

I. The gender of many nouns can be inferred from their endings.

a. Masculine are most nouns ending in *age, ège* (or *ége*), *asme, isme, iste, eu, au, oir* ; also most of those ending in a consonant, except in *eur*.

b. Feminine are most nouns ending in *té, tié, ence, ense, ance, tion, and sion* ; also in mute *e* preceded by a vowel or double consonant.

II. The gender of many French nouns may be inferred from their meaning.

a. Masculine are all names of male persons, and of animals conspicuously male ; also names of seasons, months, days, divisions of the day (except hours), and cardinal points, names of trees and metals, and infinitives used as nouns.

b. Feminine are names of female persons, and of animals conspicuously female ; most names of countries, islands, towns, and rivers, if they end in e mute ; and most names of fruits and flowers.

III. Some nouns are either feminine or masculine, according to their different meanings : thus, **le manche** *the handle*, **la manche** *the sleeve*; **le vapeur** *the steamer*, **la vapeur** *the steam*.

74. Words qualifying or relating to nouns—as articles, adjectives, pronouns—have also usually a distinction of masculine and feminine form, so as to agree in gender with the nouns to which they belong.

ARTICLES.

75. There are, as in English, two articles, the definite and the indefinite.

76. The definite article has in the singular a different form for each gender : namely, **le** before a masculine noun, and **la** before a feminine. Examples are : **le père** *the father*, **la mère** *the mother*, **le livre** *the book*, **la fleur** *the flower*.

77. But in the plural there is one form of the article, **les**, for both genders : thus, **les pères** *the fathers*, **les mères** *the mothers*, **les livres** *the books*, **les fleurs** *the flowers*.

78. Before a word beginning with a vowel (or h mute : 50c), **le** and **la** both lose their vowel, and take the apostrophe, becoming alike **l'** (22c): thus,

l'ami the friend, l'amie the (female) friend, l'homme the man, l'heure the hour.

79. The indefinite article is *un* before a masculine noun, and *une* before a feminine : thus, *un roi a king, une reine a queen, un livre a book, une fleur a flower.*

The indefinite article has no plural.

80. The articles must always be repeated in French before every noun to which they belong : thus, *the father and mother le père et la mère, a king and queen un roi et une reine.*

81. *a.* The definite article is often used in French where we use a possessive : thus, *je tournai la tête I turned my head, fermez les yeux shut your eyes.*

b. It is sometimes used distributively, in the sense of each or every : thus, *deux fois la semaine twice a week.*

c. For the use of the article with proper names, see 103.

d. For the partitive and inclusive uses of the article see 95-102.

82. In certain cases where the English use the indefinite article it is omitted in French. Thus :

a. It is often omitted before a word standing in apposition with another : thus, *Dieppe, ville de Normandie Dieppe, a city of Normandy.*

b. It is usually omitted before a predicate noun designating in a general way nationality or condition of life or profession : thus, *je suis Américain I am an American, son père est soldat his father is a soldier.*

c. It is omitted before *cent* and *mille* : thus, *mille jours, cent ans a thousand days, a hundred years.*

83. The preposition *de of* is always contracted with the following article *le* into *du*, and with *les* into *des*; with *l'* and *la* it remains unchanged : thus, *du père of the father, the father's, des mères*

of the mothers ; but, *de la mère of the mother, de l'homme the man's*.

84. *Le* is contracted with the preceding preposition *à* to into *au*, and *les* with *à* into *aux* ; but *la* and *l'* remain unchanged after *à* : thus, *au roi to the king, aux pères to the fathers, aux reines to the queens* ; but, *à la reine to the queen, à l'ami to the friend*.

PLURAL OF NOUNS.

85. The plural of a noun is generally formed in French, as in English, by adding *s* to the singular : thus, *le roi the king, les rois the kings; la fleur the flower, les fleurs the flowers*.

The principal exceptions to this rule are as follows :

a. Nouns ending in the sibilants *s*, *x*, and *z* have the same form in the plural as in the singular : thus, *le fils the son, les fils the sons; la noix the walnut, les noix the walnuts; le nez the nose, les nez the noses*.

b. Nouns ending in *au* and *eu*, and a few in *ou*, add *x* instead of *s* : thus, *le chapeau the hat, les chapeaux the hats; le lieu the place, les lieux the places; le genou the knee, les genoux the knees*.

The nouns in *ou* taking *x* in the plural are *bijou jewel, caillou pebble, chou cabbage, genou knee, hibou owl, joujou plaything, pou louse*—all masculine. Other nouns in *ou* take *s*, according to the general rule : *e.g., fous fools, clous nails, trous holes*.

c. Most nouns ending in *al* and *ail* change these endings to *aux* for the plural : thus, *le cheval*

the horse, les chevaux the horses; le travail the work, les travaux the works.

d. A few nouns form their plural quite irregularly; the most important are: *l'œil the eye, les yeux the eyes; le ciel the heaven, les cieux the heavens.*

86. No French noun has any variation of form to express the varying relations of case; the simple noun stands as subject and as object; the other case-relations are in general expressed by prepositions.

87. The meaning of the English possessive is (as often in English also) expressed by the help of the preposition *de of*: thus, *la maison du roi the king's house, les livres des filles the girls' books.*

88. A noun in French is never used (as it sometimes is in English) datively, or as indirect object of a verb without a preposition. Thus, *I give the man the book* is always *je donne le livre à l'homme*—literally, *I give the book to the man.*

89. The prepositions *de* and *à* must be repeated before every noun that they govern: thus, *des pères et des mères of the fathers and mothers, aux hommes, aux femmes, et aux enfants to the men, women, and children.*

EXERCISE 1.

ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

VOCABULARY.

l'homme (m.), the man
l'enfant (m.), the child
le père, the father

la femme, the woman
le garçon, the boy
la mère, the mother

le fils, *the son*
 le chapeau, *the hat*
 le livre, *the book*
 deux, *two*
 et, *and*

la fille, *the girl, daughter*
 le cheval, *the horse*
 l'œil (*m.*), *the eye*
 trois, *three*
 donne (3d pers. singular), *gives*

[Present tense of *avoir* *have*, see 186, and 192 ...]

I.

1. L'enfant a un père et une mère. 2. Avez-vous un cheval? 3. Nous avons trois chevaux. 4. Le garçon a le chapeau de l'homme. 5. Les femmes ont les chapeaux des enfants. 6. La femme a-t-elle un enfant? 7. Elle a deux fils et deux filles. 8. Elle donne un cheval au garçon et un chapeau à la fille. 9. Le père donne les livres aux filles et aux garçons. 10. J'ai deux yeux et vous avez deux yeux. 11. Le fils de la femme a deux chevaux.

II.

1. The boy has a brother and a sister. 2. Has the man a son? 3. He has two sons and a daughter. 4. Have you the boy's hat? 5. We have the boys' hats. 6. The boys have the man's horses. 7. The son and daughter of the woman have the books. 8. A horse has two eyes and a man has two eyes. 9. The child gives the book to the woman. 10. The girl gives three books to the father and the father gives two horses to the girls and boys. 11. I have two hats.

90. In French (as often in English), the material of which anything is made is expressed by help of the preposition *de of*: thus, *une bague d'or a ring of gold, a gold ring, des chapeaux de velours*

velvet hats, *une table de bois* *a wooden table*, *le drap de laine* *the woolen cloth*.

91. Nouns expressing measure of quantity, of weight, of number, and so on, are also followed (as usually in English) by *de of* before the name of the thing measured: thus, *une bouteille de vin* *a bottle of wine*, *une livre de sucre* *a pound of sugar*.

92. Also after adverbs of quantity, *de of* is required in French (though usually omitted in English): thus, *beaucoup d'eau* *much water* (literally, *much of water*), *trop de vin* *too much wine*.

93. A noun with *de* is used as a genitive of apposition or equivalence: thus, *le nom de Henri* *the name of Henry*, *le titre de président* *the title of president*, *le mot de mariage* *the word marriage*.

94. A noun preceded by *à* is often used to express that by which something is characterized, as a distinguishing feature or quality, a purpose, means, ingredient, and the like. Thus, *l'homme au long nez* *the man with a long nose*, *des arbres à fruit* *fruit trees*, *un bateau à vapeur* *a steamboat*.

a. Other special uses of *à* with nouns are: 1. after *mal* *ache*: as, *mal à la tête* *headache*, *mal aux dents* *toothache*; 2. between two numerals to express approximate number, and between two nouns to express succession: as, *dix à douze* *ten or twelve*, *peu à peu* *little by little*.

PARTITIVE NOUN.

95. The partitive sense of a noun is that which in English may be expressed by putting *some* or *any* before the noun, but which is oftenest left unexpressed: thus, *have you bread* (i.e., *some bread*, or *any bread*)? *they had pens*, but *they had no ink* (i.e., *some pens*, not *any ink*); and so on.

96. In French, this sense of a noun is in general distinctly expressed, by putting before it the preposition *de of*, along (usually) with the definite article: thus, *j'ai du pain* *I have bread* (literally, *of the bread*), *avez-vous des livres* *have you books* (literally, *of the books*)? *donnez-moi de la farine et de l'eau* *give me some flour and water*.

97. Sometimes, however, the article is omitted, and the preposition alone expresses the partitive sense of the noun. This is the case:

a. When the noun has an adjective before it: thus, *j'ai de bon pain* (not *du bon pain*) *I have good bread*, *nous avons d'excellents livres* *we have excellent books*.

b. After a negative verb: thus, *je n'ai pas de pain* (not *du pain*) *I have not any bread*, *nous n'avons jamais de livres* *we never have books*.

98. More rarely, both preposition and article are omitted, and the bare noun stands in the partitive sense, as in English. This is the case:

a. After *ni . . . ni*, meaning *neither . . . nor*: thus, *je n'ai ni pain ni beurre* *I have neither bread nor butter*.

b. In long enumerations: thus, *il y a sur la table eau, vin, bière, pain, beurre, fromage* *there is on the table water, wine, beer, bread, butter, cheese*.

99. The partitive noun may stand in any noun construction—as subject, object, predicate, as governed by a preposition (except *de*), and so on. Thus, *des soldats l'arrêtèrent* *some soldiers ar-*

rested him, il est des gens qui mentent there are people who lie, avec du courage with courage.

100. A partitive noun is sometimes used in French where the English has an appositive noun or adjective : thus, *quelque chose de bon something good, cent soldats de prisonniers, cent de tués a hundred soldiers prisoners, a hundred killed.*

INCLUSIVE SENSE OF THE NOUN.

101. On the other hand, a noun is sometimes used in its most inclusive sense, or as signifying the whole class of objects to which it applies. This sense, which is usually left unexpressed in English, requires in French the definite article before the noun : thus, *man (i.e., the whole race) is mortal l'homme est mortel, men (i.e., all men) are mortal les hommes sont mortels, sleep is the brother of death le sommeil est le frère de la mort.*

a. The article thus used may conveniently be called the **INCLUSIVE ARTICLE**.

b. The inclusive article is especially common before abstract nouns : *e.g., la vie life, la beauté beauty, la nature Nature, la fortune fortune.*

102. The frequently occurring expression of the partitive and inclusive senses of the noun, which in English are left to be simply inferred from the connection, is a marked feature of French usage. Often, the two senses, alike unexpressed in English, are distinguished in French in the same brief sentence : thus, *birds have wings (i.e., all birds, but a certain limited number of wings) les oiseaux ont des ailes, time is money le temps est de l'argent.*

PROPER NAMES.

103. Names of countries and provinces in

French generally take the definite article. Thus, *la France France, la Lorraine Lorraine*.

I. But the article is omitted before names of countries in certain cases, especially the following:

a. After *en in, into, to*: thus, *il est en France he is in France, je vais en Amérique I am going to America*.

b. After words meaning *king, emperor, kingdom, empire, duchy*, or the like; also after *histoire history, carte map*, etc.: thus, *roi de France king of France, l'empire d'Allemagne the empire of Germany, une carte d'Amérique a map of America*.

c. After the name of a commodity coming from the country designated: thus, *les vins de France the wines of France (French wines), du cuir de Russie Russian leather, de l'or de Californie some Californian gold*.

II. With other proper names, French usage in regard to adding the article is in general the same as English: but—

a. The article is used before the name of a single mountain: thus, *le Vésuve Vesuvius, le Mont Blanc Mont Blanc*.

b. Proper names, whether of persons or places, take the article when qualified by an adjective: thus, *le pauvre Jean poor John, l'antique Rome ancient Rome*.

c. The article is used before a title: thus, *le docteur Pasteur Dr. Pasteur, le général Boulanger General Boulanger*.

EXERCISE 2.

PARTITIVE AND INCLUSIVE USES OF THE NOUN, ETC.

VOCABULARY.

Dieu (m.), God

la robe, the dress

le pain, the bread

la vie, life

le velours, the velvet

la France, France

l'Europe (*m.*), *Europe*
 peu, *adv.*, *little*
 mais, *but*
 l'histoire (*f.*), *history*
 la viande, *meat*
 la soie, *silk*

la chaise, *the chair*
 le pays, *the country*
 l'Angleterre (*f.*), *England*
 le bois, *wood*
 beaucoup, *adv.*, *much*
 en, *prep.*, *in*

[Present tense of être *be*, see 194.]

I.

1. Les femmes ont-elles des robes? 2. Elles ont des chapeaux de velours et beaucoup de robes de soie. 3. L'enfant a-t-il du pain et de la viande? 4. L'homme donne du pain à l'enfant. 5. Avez-vous des livres? 6. J'ai une histoire d'Angleterre. 7. La France est un pays de l'Europe. 8. L'homme est l'enfant de Dieu. 9. Êtes-vous la fille de l'homme? 10. Je suis la femme de l'homme. 11. Les filles et les fils de la femme sont des enfants. 12. Nous sommes en France, mais ils sont en Angleterre. 13. L'histoire est la vie des pays. 14. Nous avons beaucoup de chaises de bois, mais nous avons peu de chaises de velours.

II.

1. Have you any silk and velvet? 2. I have much silk and little velvet. 3. The girl gives the man meat and bread. 4. I have brothers and sisters; the brothers are in France and the sisters are in England. 5. England is in Europe. 6. We have a history of France, and many histories of England. 7. God is the father of man. 8. God gives life to man. 9. We have many velvet chairs, but the woman has one wooden chair. 10. Many women have dresses, but few women have velvet dresses. 11. The books are

histories. 12. Are you the child's father? 13. I am the child's father. 14. We are boys and girls.

ADJECTIVES.

GENDER AND NUMBER.

104. Adjectives in French have in general a variation of form for gender and for number, and are made to agree in both these respects with the nouns (or pronouns) to which they relate.

a. An adjective, in whatever construction or in whatever position it may stand, must always agree in gender and number with the word which it qualifies.

b. An adjective qualifying more than one noun is generally made plural and masculine if one of the qualified nouns is masculine : thus, **une veste et un pantalon bleus** *a blue vest and trousers.*

105. A feminine adjective ends always in mute **e**; and the feminine of most adjectives is made by simply adding mute **e** to the masculine form : thus,

m.	f.	m.	f.
petit, petite, <i>small</i>		aisé, aisée, <i>easy</i>	
grand, grande, <i>great</i>		joli, jolie, <i>pretty</i>	

But there are many exceptions to this rule. Thus :

a. If a masculine adjective ends already in **e** mute, the feminine has the same form : thus,

m. f.	m. f.
sage, <i>wise, well-behaved</i>	impie, <i>impious</i>

b. Adjectives ending in the masculine in **el**, **eil**, **ien**, **on**, also many in **s** and **t**, double their final

consonant before the added mute *e* of the feminine : thus,

m.	f.	m.	f.
cruel,	cruelle, <i>cruel</i>	bon,	bonne, <i>good</i>
gros,	grosse, <i>big</i>	sot,	sotte, <i>stupid</i>

c. Adjectives ending in the masculine in *x* and *f* change these respectively to *s* and *v* before the added *e* mute : thus,

m.	f.	m.	f.
heureux,	heureuse, <i>happy</i>	jaloux,	jalouse, <i>jealous</i>
vif,	vive, <i>lively</i>	neuf,	neuve, <i>new</i>

106. In some adjectives, changes of spelling are the necessary result of the addition of *e* for the feminine : thus,

a. Adjectives having in the masculine an *e* before a final consonant (whether pronounced or silent) change it to *è* in the feminine, if the consonant is not doubled (17*a*) : thus,

m.	f.	m.	f.
cher,	chère, <i>dear</i>	complet,	complète, <i>complete</i>

And *ef* in like manner becomes *ève* : thus, **bref**, **brève** *brief*.

b. Final *c* is changed for the feminine to **que** (58*a*), and final *g* to **gue** (48*b*) : thus,

m.	f.	m.	f.
public,	publique, <i>public</i>	long,	longue, <i>long</i>

And so **oblong** *oblong*. But **grec** *Greek* makes **grecque** (not **grèque**) ; and **blanc** *white*, **franc** *frank*, **sec** *dry*, make more irregularly **blanche**, **franche**, **sèche**.

c. Adjectives ending in **gu** add *ë* for the feminine (7) : thus, **aigu**, **aiguë** *acute*, **ambigu**, **ambiguë** *ambiguous*.

107. Five adjectives have two different forms

in the masculine, from one of which the feminine is made ; they are :

m.	f.
beau bel,	belle, <i>beautiful</i>
nouveau nouvel,	nouvelle, <i>new, novel</i>
vieux vieil,	vieille <i>old</i>
fou fol,	folle, <i>foolish, mad</i>
mou mol,	molle, <i>soft</i>

a. Of the two masculine forms, the one in *l* is used before a word beginning with a vowel (or *h* mute): thus, *un bel homme a handsome man*, *un fol espoir a foolish hope*, but *un beau livre a handsome book*, *l'homme est beau the man is handsome*, and so on.

108. Some adjectives form their feminine more irregularly ; of these the commonest are :

m.	f.	m.	f.
fraîs, fraîche	<i>fresh</i>	faux, fausse,	<i>false</i>
doux, douce,	<i>sweet</i>	favori, favorite,	<i>favorite</i>

109. The plural of an adjective is generally formed as the plural of a noun of like ending would be : thus,

a. A feminine adjective (since it ends in *e*) always adds *s* for the plural.

b. Masculines in general add *s* ; but final *s* or *x* (*z* does not occur) remain unchanged ; *au* and *eu* (not *ou*) add *x* ; *al* is usually changed to *aux*.

c. But *bleu blue* makes *bleus* ; some in *al* make *als* (as *fatals, finals, ovals*, etc.) ; of the adjectives having two forms in the singular (107), the plural is made from the form ending in *u* : thus, *beaux, nouveaux, fous, mous*.

POSITION.

110. The adjective in French comes more

usually after than before the noun which it qualifies.

a. Adjectives have great freedom of position in French, and it depends very much upon the euphony of the sentence and the choice of the writer or speaker whether in a given case the adjective shall precede or follow the noun. The following rules point out some of the leading considerations that help to determine the question.

111. A few of the commonest adjectives are almost invariably placed before the noun.

a. These are especially the adjectives meaning *good* and *bad*, *large* and *small*, *young* and *old*, also *beau handsome*, *vrai true*, and some others : thus, *un beau livre a handsome book*, *mon vieux cousin my old cousin*, *des grands hommes great men*.

112. a. An adjective denoting a physical quality, as color or form, inclines to follow the noun ; one denoting an ideal or moral quality, to precede it : thus, *des fleurs rouges red flowers*, *le bouillon chaud the hot broth*, *l'heureuse fille the happy girl*.

b. An adjective tends to follow the noun when taken in a more literal sense, and to precede it when taken in a more figurative sense : thus, *un fossé profond a deep ditch*, *un profond silence a deep silence*.

c. In virtue of these differences, some adjectives have a well-marked distinction of meaning, according as they precede or follow the noun : thus, *mon cher ami my dear friend*, *un livre cher an expensive book*, *sa propre main his own hand*, *une main propre a clean hand*.

113. An adjective, of either gender or number, is often used as a noun. Thus, *un riche a rich man*, *cette belle this beauty*, *les pauvres the poor*.

114. Adjectives are often, as in English, modified or limited by nouns joined to them by a preposition, especially *de* or *à*.

In the majority of cases, the French preposition corresponds to the one that is used in English ; but :

a. **De** is often used before a noun expressing source or cause or motive, after an adjective which in English requires a different preposition : thus, **content de lui** *satisfied with him*, **fâché de ma faute** *sorry for my fault*, **surpris de cette nouvelle** *surprised at this news*.

b. **De** is sometimes used in the sense of *in respect of*, *in regard to*, where the English uses a different preposition : thus, **riche d'attraits** *rich in attractions*, **curieux de l'avenir** *curious about the future*.

c. **De** is used before a numeral after an adjective signifying quantity or dimension ; also after a comparative adjective, to signify measure of difference. Thus, **grand de six pieds** *six feet tall*, **large de deux pouces** *two inches wide*, **âgé de douze ans** *twelve years old*, **plus haut d'un pied** *higher by a foot*.

d. The preposition **à** *to, toward, at*, is sometimes used in the sense of *in respect to* where English prefers a different expression : thus, **adroit au jeu** *skilled in play*, **âpre au gain** *greedy for gain*, **il n'est bon à rien** *he is good for nothing*.

For demonstrative and interrogative adjectives, see 153-4 and 159-60.

EXERCISE 3.

ADJECTIVES.

VOCABULARY.

bon, bonne, <i>good</i>	mauvais, mauvaise, <i>bad</i>
beau, bel, belle, <i>beautiful</i>	joli, jolie <i>pretty</i>
grand, grande, <i>big, large</i>	petit, petite, <i>little, small</i>
vieux, vieil, vieille, <i>old</i>	jeune, <i>young</i>
heureux, heureuse, <i>happy</i>	cher, chère, <i>dear, expensive</i>
blanc, blanche, <i>white</i>	nouveau, nouvelle, <i>new</i>
la maison, <i>the house</i>	la ville, <i>the city, town</i>
le jardin, <i>the garden</i>	l'église (f.), <i>the church</i>
dans, <i>prep., in</i>	toujours, <i>adv., always</i>
maintenant, <i>adv., now</i>	très, <i>adv., very</i>
mon (m.), ma (f.), <i>my</i>	aussi, <i>adv., as, too. also</i>

[Imperfect tenses of **avoir** and **être**; see 186 and 194, also 187a.]

I.

1. La jeune fille est-elle jolie? 2. La petite fille est jeune et jolie. 3. La nouvelle maison de mon père est grande et le jardin est grand aussi. 4. Les maisons de la grande ville sont très mauvaises. 5. Les villes de la France sont grandes et belles. 6. Mon père était un bel homme, mais il est maintenant très vieux. 7. Nous avons de belles fleurs dans un petit jardin. 8. Les jeunes filles ont des robes nouvelles. 9. La jeune femme a une robe très chère. 10. Le vieil homme est mon cher père. 11. Les petits enfants avaient des fleurs blanches. 12. Nous avons aussi de belles fleurs blanches. 14. Ils étaient dans la vieille petite église blanche. 15. Les bons sont toujours heureux.

II.

1. Were the little girls happy? 2. The pretty little girls were happy and good. 3. The white flower is very pretty. 4. We had many pretty white flowers in a little garden. 5. Were you in the little new church? 6. We were in the large old church. 8. My dear father's house was in the great city. 9. The big book is the history of the happy life of a good man. 10. My dear brother is very happy now. 11. He has a very beautiful wife and three pretty daughters. 12. My dear little daughter had a very expensive white dress. 13. We had some new white bread.^a

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

115. Adjectives in French are for the most

part not otherwise compared than by putting before them adverbs meaning *more*, etc.

a. The comparative adverb is *plus more*, and this is made superlative by prefixing to it the definite article: thus, *le* (or *la*, *les*) *plus the most*.

b. We may also prefix *moins less* and *le moins least* to an adjective, producing a comparison downwards, or of diminution.

116. Hence, examples of the ordinary comparison of a French adjective are as follows:

<i>beau, handsome</i>	<i>plus beau, handsomer</i>	<i>le plus beau, handsomest</i>
<i>jeune, young</i>	<i>plus jeune, younger</i>	<i>le plus jeune, youngest</i>
<i>aimable, amiable</i>	<i>plus aimable, more amiable</i>	<i>le plus aimable, most amiable</i>

117. But three adjectives have a special form for the comparative, which then is made superlative by prefixing to it the definite article. They are:

<i>bon, good</i>	<i>meilleur, better</i>	<i>le meilleur, best</i>
<i>mauvais, bad</i>	<i>pire, worse</i>	<i>le pire, worst</i>
<i>petit, small</i>	<i>moindre, smaller</i>	<i>le moindre, smallest</i>

118. Comparison of equality is expressed by *aussi as* before the adjective. After the adjective, both *as* and *than* are expressed by *que*. Thus: *aussi belle que ma sœur as beautiful as my sister*, *plus petit que mon frère smaller than my brother*.

119. Special rules are:

a. The article showing the superlative has to be dropped after a possessive: thus, *mon plus jeune frère my youngest brother* (not distinguishable from *my younger brother*).

b. If a superlative adjective is put after a noun having the definite article, the article must be repeated: thus,

l'homme le plus savant the most learned man, la ville la plus peuplée the most populous city.

c. After a superlative, the preposition *de of*, and not *dans in*, is used before a word of place : thus, *le plus bel homme du monde the handsomest man in the world, la plus grande ville de l'Europe the largest city in Europe.*

NUMERALS.

CARDINALS.

120. The names of numbers are as follows :

1 un	10 dix	61 soixante et un
2 deux	20 vingt	62 soixante-deux
3 trois	30 trente	63 soixante-trois
4 quatre	40 quarante	64 soixante-quatre
5 cinq	50 cinquante	65 soixante-cinq
6 six	60 soixante	66 soixante-six
7 sept	70 soixante-dix	67 soixante-sept
8 huit	80 quatre-vingts	68 soixante-huit
9 neuf	90 quatre-vingt-dix	69 soixante neuf
10 dix	100 cent	70 soixante-dix
11 onze	101 cent un	71 soixante et onze
12 douze	102 cent deux	72 soixante-douze
13 treize	103 cent trois	73 soixante-treize
14 quatorze	200 deux cents	74 soixante-quatorze
15 quinze	201 deux cent un	75 soixante-quinze
16 seize	206 deux cent six	76 soixante-seize
17 dix-sept	1000 mille, mil	77 soixante-dix-sept
18 dix-huit	2000 deux mille	78 soixante-dix-huit
19 dix-neuf	1,000,000 un million	79 soixante-dix-neuf
20 vingt	2,000,000 deux millions	80 quatre vingts

121. *a.* Un is masculine only, and forms the feminine une; no other numeral makes a distinction of gender.

b. Vingt *twenty*, score, and cent *hundred*, are the only numerals (below million) that make a plural :

thus, **vingts, cents.** This plural form is used when *score* or *hundred* is multiplied by a preceding numeral—not, however, if an added numeral follows: thus,

cing cents, *five hundred*
quatre-vingts, *fourscore*

cing cent dix, *five hundred and ten*
quatre-vingt-un, *eighty-one*

122. The other odd numbers between the tens are made in the same way as those for 61 to 69 in the table.

Thus, **vingt et un** 21, **vingt-deux** 22, **trente-trois** 33, **quarante-cinq** 45, **cinquante-huit** 58, and so on.

a. A hyphen is always inserted between a ten and a unit immediately following, but not when *et* stands between; and it is not used after *cent* or *mille*.

123. a. In giving dates, the briefer form *mil* is used instead of *mille*: thus,

mil sept cent soixante-seize 1776

en mil huit cent quatre-vingt-cinq in 1885

b. In giving the time of day, *o'clock* is expressed by *heures*, literally *hours*, and the parts of hours, in the manner of the following examples: *quelle heure est-il what time is it? une heure one o'clock, trois heures et demie half-past three, à six heures moins un quart at a quarter before six, huit heures et vingt minutes twenty minutes past eight.* But *douze heures* is not used, *midi noon* and *minuit midnight* being used instead: thus, *il est minuit et demie it is half after twelve*: see 129a.

c. For expressions of measure, see 114c.

124. For *times* with a numeral is used *fois*: thus, *deux fois twice, cinq fois sept font trente-cinq five times seven are* (literally, *make*) *thirty-five*.

125. After *plus more* and *moins less*, before a numeral, *than* is expressed by *de*: thus, *plus de trois ans more than three years, moins de dix minutes less than ten minutes*.

ORDINALS.

126. The ordinals are mostly formed from the cardinals, whether simple or compound, by adding the ending *-ième*, before which a final *e* of the cardinal is omitted. But—

a. First is *premier*, and *second* is either *second* or the regular *deuxième*—except in compound numbers, where *first* is *unième*, and *second* is *deuxième* only.

b. Cinq makes *cinquième*, with inserted *u*; and *neuf* makes *neuvième*, with change of *f* to *v*.

127. Examples of the ordinals are :

1st	<i>premier</i>	20th	<i>vingtième</i>
2d	{ <i>second</i>	21st	<i>vingt et unième</i>
	{ <i>deuxième</i>	33d	<i>trente-troisième</i>
3d	<i>troisième</i>	67th	<i>soixante-dix-septième</i>
4th	<i>quatrième</i>	99th	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième</i>
5th	<i>cinquième</i>	100th	<i>centième</i>
6th	<i>sixième</i>	1248th	<i>mille deux cent quarante-huitième</i>

a. An ordinal is generally preceded by the definite article, le or la or les; and premier and second have a special feminine form: thus, la première, la seconde.

128. The cardinal numeral sometimes stands in French where in English we use the ordinal: namely—

a. In giving the day of the month, except the first: thus, *le deux janvier the second of January, du douze au vingt-trois avril from the 12th to the 23d of April, le dix du mois the 10th of the month*; but, *le premier mai the 1st of May*.

b. In giving the title of a sovereign, except the first and sometimes the second: thus, *Henri quatre Henry the Fourth, Louis quatorze Louis Fourteenth*; but, *Charles premier Charles the First*.

c. In other numerations also, where the number follows the thing enumerated: thus, *tome deux volume second, chapitre quatre chapter fourth*.

129. As in English, the ordinals are used also as fractionals—but only from *fifth* upward: thus, *un cinquième a fifth part, trois vingtièmes three twentieths*.

a. For *half* the French has two words, *moitié f.* as noun, and *demi (demie f.)* as adjective. *Demi* before a noun is joined to it with a hyphen, and is not varied for gender. Thus, *la moitié du temps half the time, un demi-pied a half foot, une demi-heure a half hour, une heure et demie an hour and a half*.

b. The words for *third* and *fourth* or *quarter* are *tiers* and *quart* respectively: thus, *trois et un tiers three and a third, un quart d'heure quarter of an hour*.

EXERCISE 4.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND NUMERALS.

VOCABULARY.

la famille, <i>the family</i>	l'an (m.), <i>the year</i>
l'heure (f.), <i>the hour</i>	le mois, <i>the month</i>
avril (m.), <i>April</i>	juin (m.), <i>June</i>
juillet (m.), <i>July</i>	la minute, <i>the minute</i>
le franc, <i>the franc</i>	âgé, âgée, <i>old, aged</i>
riche, <i>rich</i>	'haut, 'haute, <i>high, tall</i>
le pied, <i>the foot</i>	non, <i>no</i>

I.

1. Le garçon est-il aussi jeune que la fille? 2. Non, il est le plus âgé de la famille. 3. Les vieux livres sont plus chers que les nouveaux. 4. La petite fille est meilleure que mon grand fils. 5. Mon fils est le pire des garçons. 6. L'Angleterre est moins grande que la France, mais elle est le plus riche pays de l'Europe. 7. Il est cinq heures moins vingt minutes. 8. Le plus vieux des hommes est grand de six pieds. 9. Il est l'homme le plus riche du pays; il a soixante millions de francs. 10. Le quinze avril, mil huit cent quatre-vingt-dix. 11. La plus petite fille est âgée de deux ans et demi. 12. Les cinq grands livres sont des histoires de la vie de Louis quatorze. 13. Nous étions à l'église à midi moins un quart.

II.

1. I have the largest and the most beautiful garden in the city. 2. The old church was larger than the new church. 3. The old man was richer than the young man; he had 13,283 francs. 4. My house is

43 feet high. 5. Have you a life of Louis XV.? 6. He was the worst man in France. 7. It was half-past three. 8. The 14th of July, 1789. 9. The 3d of April, 1890. 10. June 21st, 1832. 11. My brother was in Paris a year and a half. 12. He was twenty-one years old, and he was ten years older than my younger brother. 13. The children were in the garden at a quarter before eight. 14. We were at church half an hour. 15. I was as big as the boy, but he was the oldest.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

130. Many pronouns in French, especially the personal pronouns, have a different form according as they are used conjunctively or disjunctively.

131. A conjunctive pronoun is one that is immediately connected with a verb, as either its subject or its direct or indirect object; any other is disjunctive.

132. The subject-pronouns are :

	1ST PERS.	2D PERS.	3D PERS.
SING.	<i>je, I</i>	<i>tu, thou</i>	<i>il, he ; elle, she</i>
PLUR.	<i>nous, we</i>	<i>vous, you</i>	<i>ils m., elles f., they</i>

a. In French, as in English, the pronoun of the 2d person plural, *vous you*, is ordinarily used in

addressing anyone. *Tu* *thou* is, however, used when speaking to little children or to intimate friends and relations. When *vous* is used in addressing a single person, an adjective or a participle agreeing with it is made singular.

133. The subject-pronoun stands in general immediately before the personal verb, only the negative *ne* and the object-pronouns being allowed to come in between the two.

a. But as in English, the subject-pronoun follows the verb in questions : see 192.

b. In a question, only the subject-pronoun changes its place, everything else remaining as it would be if the sentence were an assertion.

c. If the subject of a verb used interrogatively is a noun, the noun is usually put first, and a corresponding pronoun is put after the verb. Thus, *has the man a book?* is not *a l'homme un livre?* but *l'homme a-t-il un livre?* (literally, *the man, has he a book?*)

134. Of the object-pronouns, direct and indirect object, all the forms are these :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1ST PERS.	<i>me, moi, me, to me</i>	<i>nous, us, to us</i>
2D	<i>" te, toi, thee, to thee</i>	<i>vous, you, to you</i>
3D	<i>" le, him; la, her; lui, to him or her</i>	<i>les, them; leur, to them</i>

135. The uses of the object-pronouns are as follows :

a. *Nous* and *vous* are unvaried, standing in every construction and position.

b. **Me** and **moi**, and **te** and **toi**, are used either as direct or as indirect object, **me** and **te** before the verb, and **moi** and **toi** after it (for one exception, see 144*b*). Thus, *tu m'aimes thou lovest me, aime-moi love me, tu te donnes thou givest thyself, donne-toi give thyself, vous me donnez you give to me, donnez-moi give to me.*

c. **Le**, **la**, and **les** are used as direct object only, **le** being masculine, **la** feminine, and **les** of either gender; **lui** and **leur** are used only as indirect object, both being of either gender: thus, *il l'aime he loves him or her, aimez-le love him, je lui donne I give to him or her, nous leur vendons we sell to them, vendons-les let us sell them, vendons-leur let us sell to them.*

136. An object-pronoun, whether direct or indirect object, stands in general immediately before the governing verb—in the compound tenses, immediately before the auxiliary; but with this exception: that, if the verb is an imperative affirmative, the pronoun stands instead directly after it (and is joined to it by a hyphen).

For examples, see above, 135*b, c.*

a. Nothing is allowed to come between the verb and its pronoun-object; the subject, and the negative **ne**, when used, are placed outside of them: thus, *je ne vous donne pas le livre I do not give you the book, mon ami ne t'a pas vu my friend has not seen thee, ne les aimez-vous pas do you not*

love them ? ne l'aura-t-il pas fini will he not have finished it ?

b. If the verb is an imperative negative, the object-pronoun precedes instead of following it : thus, *ne lui donnez pas le livre do not give him the book, ne les aimez pas do not love them.*

137. When a verb governs two object-pronouns, one direct and the other indirect, they are both together placed either before or after it, according to the rules just given—that is, after it in the imperative affirmative, otherwise before it.

a. As regards their position relative to one another : before the verb the indirect-object pronoun, unless of the third person, precedes the direct ; but when both come after the verb, the indirect always stands last : thus, *je te le donne I give it to thee, je le lui ai donné I have given it to him, il ne nous le vendra pas he will not sell it to us, il le leur vendra he will sell it to them, vendez-le-moi sell it to me, donnez-le-lui give it to him.*

b. A verb in French does not have two direct objects, and almost never two indirect, unless one be **en** or **y** (see 261).

138. Personal pronouns not immediately connected with a verb, as either its subject or its direct or indirect object, are called disjunctive, or are said to be used disjunctively.

139. The disjunctive forms of the personal pronouns are :

	1ST PERS.	2D PERS.	3D PERS.
SING.	<i>moi, me</i>	<i>toi, thee</i>	<i>lui, him ; elle, her</i>
PLUR.	<i>nous, us</i>	<i>vous, you</i>	<i>eux m., elles f., them</i>

140. The ordinary constructions of the disjunctive pronoun are these :

a. With a preposition : thus, *à moi to me, de toi of thee, avec lui with him, sans elle without her, pour eux for them (m.), entre elles between them (f.)*.

b. Used absolutely—that is, without any verb expressed with which they are immediately connected : thus, *qui a dit cela who has said that ? moi I ; elle est plus grande que toi she is taller than thou*.

c. In combination with *même self*, to form emphatic pronouns corresponding to our *myself, thyself, etc.* : thus, *moi-même myself, lui-même himself, vous-mêmes yourselves, elles-mêmes themselves (f.)*; but *vous-même yourself*, when used of a single person.

d. As predicates after the impersonal *c'est, ce sont, it is*: thus, *c'est moi it is I, est-ce lui is it he ? ce sont eux, ce sont elles it is they* (see 156*b*).

e. But after personal forms of *être be*, the conjunctive pronoun of the direct object is used as predicate, especially in the sense of *it* or *so*, standing for an adjective or noun already expressed : thus, *êtes-vous heureux ? nous le sommes are you happy ? we are so ; la reine ? je la suis the queen ? I am she ;* and the French often uses *le* to repeat or to anticipate something stated in a preceding or following clause, while the English omits it : thus, *ils ne sont pas ici, je le vois they are not here, I see*.

141. a. When more than one pronoun, or a pronoun and noun, are subjects of the same verb, the pronoun has the disjunctive form ; and if the two are not of the same person, the compound subject is usually represented by a suitable pronoun before the verb : thus, *vous et moi (nous) sommes amis you and I are friends, lui et son oncle sont partis he and his uncle are gone*.

The same is necessary in the case of a compound object : thus, **je vous écoute, toi et lui et elle** *I listen to thee and him and her.*

b. If a subject-pronoun is separated from the verb by anything but the negative **ne** and object-pronouns, it has to take the disjunctive form : thus, **lui, saisissant un crayon, écrivit** *he, seizing a pencil, wrote* ; **eux seuls sont venus** *they alone have come.*

c. If a subject-pronoun is to be made emphatic, it is usually repeated, in its disjunctive form, either before the verb or after it : thus, **moi, je l'ai fait** *I did it*, **je ne le crois pas, moi** *I do not believe it.*

142. Besides the personal pronouns already given, there is another, a reflexive pronoun of the 3d person, having the conjunctive form **se** and the disjunctive **soi** (like **me moi, te toi**).

a. **Se** is used in the inflection of reflexive verbs (215), both as direct and as indirect object, both as singular and as plural ; **soi** is only singular, and usually relates to an indefinite subject : thus, **chacun pense à soi** *every one thinks of himself*, **n'aimer que soi** *to love only one's self.*

143. There are also two words, **en** and **y**, which have the value of genitive and dative cases, respectively, of personal pronouns of the third person. They are used chiefly of things, not of persons (except of unspecified persons in the plural).

a. **En** means *of it, of them*, and so on ; it is the equivalent of a pronoun with the preposition **de** (**de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles**).

b. **Y** means *to it, to them*, and so on ; it is the equivalent of a pronoun with the preposition **à** (**à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles**).

c. Hence they are often used with verbs to represent

nouns which, if expressed, would have to be connected with the verbs by **de** and **à** respectively: thus, **s'en approcher** *to approach it* (because one says **s'approcher de quelque chose** *to approach something*), **je vous en remercie** *I thank you for it* (because **remercier de quelque chose**), **j'en ris** *I laugh at it* (because **rire de quelque chose**), **y arracher** *to wrest from them* (because **arracher à quelqu'un** *wrest from any one*), **j'y pense** *I think of it* (because **penser à quelque chose** *think of something*)—and so on.

144. **En** and **y** are treated as conjunctive pronouns, being always joined with the verb in the sentence, whatever their logical connection, and being put before or after the verb according to the same rules as other object-pronouns (136): thus, **j'en suis certain** *I am certain of it*, **vous y êtes obéissant** *you are obedient to it*.

a. When used along with other object-pronouns, they stand last, whether before or after the governing verb: thus, **je l'y conduirai** *I will conduct him to it*, **donnez-lui-en** *give him of it (some)*, **je ne vous en donnerai pas** *I will not give you of it (any)*.

b. After the verb as well as before it **me** and **te** are used instead of **moi** and **toi** before **en**, and usually before **y**: thus, **donnez-m'en** *give me of it (or some)*, **rends-t'y** *betake thyself to it* (but sometimes **rends-y-toi**).

c. When **y** and **en** are used together, **en** follows **y**: thus, **il y en a** *there are some*.

d. **En** and **y** are originally adverbs, and are, especially **y** *there*, not seldom used with that value. They have many idiomatic uses.

145. **En** is often used partitively, standing for a noun with the partitive preposition **de**. Thus, **avez-vous du pain?** *have you bread?* **j'en ai; je vous en donnerai,** *I have some; I will give you some*.

a. Where the noun would have an adjective qualifying it, the adjective takes the partitive preposition: thus, **j'en ai de bon** *I have some (that is) good*, (equivalent to **j'ai de bon**

pain) ; voulez-vous des fleurs ? je vous en donnerai de belles *do you want flowers ? I will give you some handsome ones.*

POSSESSIVES.

146. In French is made a fuller distinction than in English between pronominal adjectives, accompanying an expressed noun which they qualify, and pronominal substantives, or pronouns proper, standing for a noun not expressed. The pronominal adjectives always qualify a following noun, and are of the same gender and number with it.

147. The POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES are :

Sing. mon m., ma f.;	plur. mes m.f., <i>my</i>
ton m., ta f.;	tes m.f., <i>thy</i>
son m., sa f.;	ses m.f., <i>his, her, its</i>
notre m.f.;	nos m.f., <i>our</i>
votre m.f.;	vos m.f., <i>your</i>
leur m.f.;	leurs m.f., <i>their</i>

a. There is no distinction made in French between *his* and *her* and *its* ; **son**, etc., has all these meanings, and, like the other adjectives, is varied only to agree with the noun which it qualifies.

148. But the feminine singular forms **ma**, **ta**, **sa** are not allowed before a word beginning with a vowel (or h mute) ; instead are used **mon**, **ton**, **son** : thus, **mon amie** *my (female) friend*, **son aimable fille** *his lovely daughter*.

149. The possessives are repeated before every noun that they qualify : thus, *my father and mother* **mon père et ma mère**, *her friends and relatives* **ses amis et ses parents**.

150. The possessive is often used in French, especially in address, where it is omitted in English : thus, **bonjour. ma sœur** *good-day, sister* ; **oui, mon général** *yes, General*,

a. On the other hand, the definite article often stands

instead of the possessive (see 81*a*), or the meaning of the possessive is expressed by an indirect object-pronoun or by **en**: thus, *il s'est cassé le bras* *he has broken his arm*, *le sol en est bon* *its soil is good*.

151. When used substantively, or without an accompanying noun expressed, the possessives have a special form and are always preceded by the definite article: thus,

le mien, la mienne, les miens (*m.*), les miennes (*f.*), *mine*
 le tien, la tienne, les tiens (*m.*), les tiennes (*f.*), *thine*
 le sien, la sienne, les siens (*m.*), les siennes (*f.*), *his, hers, its*
 le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres (*m. and f.*), *ours*
 le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres (*m. and f.*), *yours*
 le leur, la leur, les leurs (*m. and f.*), *theirs*

152. The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (as they may be called) take the gender and number of the object possessed, and must be used whenever the noun expressing that object does not immediately follow them: thus, *mon chapeau et le sien* *my hat and his (or hers)*, *son chapeau et le mien* *his (or her) hat and mine*, *nous avons nos chapeaux et ils ont les leurs* *we have our hats and they have theirs*.

EXERCISE 5.

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

VOCABULARY.

aimer, <i>love</i> (like <i>donner</i>)	parler, <i>talk</i> (like <i>donner</i>)
le frère, <i>the brother</i>	la sœur, <i>the sister</i>
l'ami (<i>m.</i>), <i>friend</i>	l'amie (<i>f.</i>), <i>friend</i>
avec, <i>with</i>	le monsieur, <i>the gentleman, sir</i>
ne - - pas, <i>not</i> (see 241)	ne - - point, <i>not at all</i>

[Present tense of *donner* *give*, see 200.]

I.

1. Aimez-vous votre mère ? 2. Je l'aime et elle m'aime aussi. 3. Donnez-vous la fleur à votre ami ? 4. Je la lui donne. 5. Nous lui parlons, mais nous ne l'aimons point. 6. L'homme donne-t-il du pain à ses enfants ? 7. Il en a, mais il ne leur en donne pas. 8. Moi, j'en ai aussi, et je leur en donne. 9. Ton frère est-il plus grand que toi ? 10. Non, je suis aussi grande que lui. 11. Je n'étais pas à Paris en juin, j'y étais en juillet. 12. Mon amie et la vôtre y étaient avec moi. 13. J'ai beaucoup de livres, et vous en avez aussi beaucoup. 14. Nous avons une histoire de France, et nous vous la donnons. 15. Vous parlez de l'histoire, mais nous n'en parlons pas.

II.

1. Was your friend at the church with you ? 2. She was there (at it) with me, and your brother was also with us. 3. Do you give bread to the poor children ? 4. We give them some, and they have much of it now. 5. The children have many flowers, and they give of them to the poor. 6. Is thy brother older than thou ? 7. He is bigger than I, but I am older than he. 8. I love you ; do you love me ? 9. I do not love you. 10. Your sister is prettier than ours, but mine is a good girl and I love her. 11. He loves me, but he does not speak to me. 12. I have a flower ; I give it to her. 13. She loves good books, and she gives some to her little brothers. 14. You do not give them to them, you give them to me.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

153. The DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES, meaning *this* or *that* and *these* or *those*, are as follows :

ce or cet m., *cette* f.; ces m.f. plural.

Cet m. is used when the following word begins with a vowel (or h mute); otherwise, ce. Thus :

ce chapeau, <i>this</i> (or <i>that</i>) <i>hat</i>	ces chapeaux, <i>these</i> (or <i>those</i>) <i>hats</i>
cette robe, <i>this</i> (etc.) <i>dress</i>	ces robes, <i>these</i> (etc.) <i>dresses</i>
cet arbre, <i>this</i> (etc.) <i>tree</i>	cet homme, <i>this</i> (etc.) <i>man</i>
cet honnête homme, <i>this</i> (etc.) <i>honest fellow</i>	

154. When the demonstrative is meant to be emphatic, or when *this* and *that* are to be distinguished from one another, the adverbs *ci* *here* and *là* *there* are added respectively to the qualified noun; and they are joined to it in writing by a hyphen: thus, ce chapeau-ci *this hat* (literally, *this hat here*), ces robes-là *those dresses*, cet homme-ci et cette femme-là *this man and that woman*.

155. The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are :

ce, *this, that, it* (indefinite and neuter); celui m., celle f., *this or that one*; ceux m., celles f., *these, those*.

a. To all of them may be added the demonstrative adverbs -ci and -là.

156. Ce has the value of a pronoun as subject of être *be* in its various tenses, and as antecedent of the relative pronouns *qui, que, etc.*

a. In the former case, it is generally to be rendered by *it* in English: thus, c'est moi *it is I*, ce fut son devoir *it was his duty*, ç'a été lui *it was (has*

been) *he, ç'aurait été dommage it would have been a pity* (see 6).

b. If the verb after **ce** is followed by a plural noun, or a plural pronoun of the third person, it is itself made plural : thus, **ce furent elles** *it was they*, **ce seront mes amis** *it will be my friends*.

c. **Ce** is much more often used than **il** with the 3^d persons of **être** in the sense of *it is, it was*, etc. In fact, **il** is hardly used except in expressions of time, before an adjective followed by a logically subject-clause (infinitive or relative) which the **il** anticipates, and in the parenthetic **il est vrai**, meaning *to be sure*.

Thus, **il est temps de partir** *it is time to leave*, **il est six heures** *it is 6 o'clock*, **il est difficile de vous plaire** *it is hard to please you* (i.e. *to please you is hard*), **chèrement, il est vrai, mais fort loin** *at a dear rate, to be sure, but very far off*;—but, **vous avez tort, c'est évident** *you are wrong, it (that) is plain*, **faites cela, ce n'est pas difficile** *do that, it is not hard*, **ce fut ma faute** *it was my fault*, **c'est votre ami qui est parti** *it is your friend that has left*.

d. **Ce** is also sometimes used with **pouvoir** and **devoir** as auxiliaries of **être**, and in a few phrases with **sembler** *seem* : thus, **ce pouvait être lui** *it might be he*, **ce doit être it** *must be*, **ce me semble** *it seems to me*.

For **ce** as antecedent of a relative, see 175.

157. The compounds of **ce** with the demonstrative adverbs are written **ceci** and **cela** (without grave accent; it is often contracted colloquially to **ça**); they mean *this* and *that* in an indefinite way, without reference to any particular object expressed. They are used in all constructions. Thus : **cela ne me plaît pas** *that does not please me*, **je ne veux pas ceci** ; **donnez-moi cela** *I don't want this* ; **give me that**, **que dites-vous de cela** *what do you say about that* ?

a. In a question *cela* is divided into *ce . . . là*: thus, *est-ce là votre livre* *is that your book?*

158. The other demonstratives, *celui* etc., distinguish gender and number, and are used of persons and of things, with more direct reference to something already expressed or distinctly understood. They are used either alone or with *ci* and *là* added to them by a hyphen: thus, *celui* *this* or *that one*, *celui-ci* *this one*, *celui-là* *that one*.

a. The simple *celui* *celle* *ceux* *celles* are used only as antecedents of a following relative, and before the preposition *de* in possessive phrases: thus, *celui qui est mon ami* *he who is my friend*, *mes amis et ceux de mon frère* *my friends and my brother's* (literally, *and those of my brother*), *ma robe et celle de ma sœur* *my dress and my sister's*.

b. In all other constructions, the compounds *celui-ci*, *celui-là*, etc., are used—as subject, as object, after prepositions, and so on: thus, *voici deux fleurs; voulez-vous celle-ci ou celle-là* *here are two flowers; will you have this one or that one?* *ce livre-ci est à moi; je ne sais rien de celui-là* *this book belongs to me; I know nothing of that one*.

c. As the last example shows, the demonstrative adjective is to be used when there is a noun with it for it to qualify, but the demonstrative pronoun to represent the noun, when the latter is omitted.

d. *Celui-ci* etc. often mean *the latter*, and *celui-là* etc. *the former*.

INTERROGATIVES.

159. The INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE, meaning *which* or *what*, is:

Sing. **quel** m., **quelle** f.; plur. **quels** m., **quelles** f.
 Thus: **quel livre avez-vous** *which (or what) book have you?* **quelles fleurs sont sur la table** *what flowers are on the table?*

160. *a.* The interrogative adjective is also used in exclamation: thus, **quelle bonté** *what goodness!* **quels beaux livres** *what beautiful books!*

b. The indefinite article, sometimes added in English after *what*, is not expressed in French: thus, **quel bel homme** *what a handsome man!*

161. The INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS are:

qui , <i>who? whom? what?</i>	quoi , <i>what?</i>
que , <i>what?</i>	lequel etc., <i>which?</i>

162. **Qui** is hardly used except of persons. It stands for all genders and numbers, and in all constructions—as subject, object, predicate, after a preposition, etc. Thus: **qui est là** *who is there?* **qui cherchent-ils** *whom do they seek?* **qui êtes-vous** *who are you?* **à qui est ce livre-là** *to whom does that book belong?*

a. **Qui** is sometimes, but only rarely, used as subject in the sense of *what?* Generally, the phrase **qu'est-ce qui** *what is that which* or *what is it that* is employed instead. Thus: **qui vous amène** *what brings you here?* **qu'est-ce qui vous trouble** *what troubles you?* (literally, *what is it that troubles you?*)

163. **Que** and **quoi** *what?* are also without distinction of gender or number, but are used only of things; **que** is conjunctive (131), and **quoi** is disjunctive (like *me moi*, etc.).

a. **Que** is only object of a verb, or predicate with an intransitive verb: thus, **que voulez-vous** *what do you want?* **que nous dit cet homme** *what*

does this man say to us? qu'est-ce or qu'est-ce que c'est what is it? que sert-il of what use is it?

b. **Quoi** is used absolutely, and with a preposition: thus, *elle vous a donné—quoi she has given you—what? de quoi parle-t-il of what is he speaking?*

c. Both **que** and **quoi** are frequent in exclamation: thus, *que de fois je l'ai vu how many times I have seen him! quoi de plus heureux what more fortunate! quoi! vous y êtes encore what! you are here still?*

d. **Que** is often also an adverb, meaning *how? why?*: thus, *que vous êtes belle how handsome you are! que parlez-vous si haut why do you speak so loud?*

164. **Lequel** is made up of the interrogative adjective **quel** and the definite article; it is written as if one word, but both its parts are inflected for gender and number: thus,

Sing. **lequel** m., **laquelle** f.; Plur. **lesquels** m., **lesquelles** f.

They are used in all constructions, in the sense of *which? which one? what one?* Thus: *voici deux livres: lequel choisissez-vous here are two books: which do you choose? laquelle de ses sœurs est mariée which of his sisters is married? par lequel de ces chemins by which one of these roads?*

a. The article in **lequel** etc. also combines with the prepositions **de** and **à** just as when it stands alone, making **duquel**, **desquels**, **desquelles**; **auquel**, **auxquels**, **auxquelles**: thus, *duquel de vos amis parlez-vous of which of your friends do you speak? auxquelles de ces filles les a-t-il donnés to which of these girls has he given them?*

165. After some interrogative words—the pronouns **qui** and **que**, the adjective **quel**, and the adverbs **où** *where?* **quand** *when?* **comment** *how?* **combien** *how much, how many?*—a subject-noun is allowed to be itself put after the

verb in asking a question : thus, *que veut cette femme* *what does this woman want ? où est notre ami* *where is our friend ? quel livre a l'écolier* *what book has the scholar ?*

166. It is common in French to use paraphrases in asking questions : thus, *qu'est-ce que vous avez* *what is it that you have ?* for *qu'avez-vous* *what have you ?* *qui est-ce qui vend* *who is it that sells ?* for *qui vend* *who sells ?* and the like ; also *est-ce que vous avez* *is it [the case] that you have ?* for *avez-vous* *have you ?* and especially *est-ce que j'aime* instead of *aimé-je*, and the like.

EXERCISE 6.

DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

VOCABULARY.

<i>chercher</i> , <i>seek</i> (like <i>donner</i>)	<i>travailler</i> , <i>work</i> (like <i>donner</i>)
<i>la main</i> , <i>the hand</i>	<i>ne . . . jamais</i> , <i>never</i> (see 244)
<i>la dame</i> , <i>the lady</i>	<i>madame</i> (<i>f.</i>), <i>madam</i>
<i>propre</i> , <i>own</i> , <i>clean</i>	<i>oui</i> , <i>yes</i>

I.

1. Est-ce là votre père ? 2. Non, monsieur, ce n'est pas mon père, c'est mon frère. 3. Qui sont ces hommes-là ? 4. Ce sont les deux frères de cet homme-ci ; celui-ci travaille toujours, mais celui-là ne travaille jamais. 5. Quels livres cherchez-vous ? 6. Je ne cherche point ceux-ci, je cherche mes propres livres et ceux de ma sœur. 7. J'aime ces robes-ci, mais je n'aime point celles de cette dame. 8. Qui est-ce là ? C'est moi, madame. 9. Qu'est-ce que vous avez dans la main, et qui vous le donne ? 10. Je ne vous donne pas ceci, mais je vous donne cela. 11. Laquelle des fleurs aviez-vous ? 12. Cette fleur blanche est la mienne. 13. Qui me parle et de quoi parle-t-il ? 14. Il nous parle de cet homme et de ces enfants.

II.

1. Is that your house? 2. Yes, madam, it is my house, and this one is also mine. 3. This one is prettier than my father's. 4. This lady is handsome, but I do not like that one. 5. Which child do you love? 6. I love these children, but I do not love those. 7. Who is this child? 8. It is the son of that man. 9. What are you seeking? 10. I am seeking my horses and my brother's. 11. Of whom are you speaking? 12. I am not speaking of this, I am speaking of that. 13. To which of the boys are you speaking, and who is speaking to you? 14. I am speaking to this one. 15. This man and this woman and these children were in that church.

RELATIVES.

167. All the interrogative pronouns are used also as relatives, but with some notable differences from their use as interrogatives.

168. By far the commonest relatives are *qui* and *que*, *qui* standing as subject and *que* as direct object of a verb. Both of them signify either persons or things, of any gender or number. Thus: *l'enfant qui pleure the child that cries*, *des oiseaux qui volent birds that fly*, *le livre que vous avez the book which you have*, *les amis que nous aimons the friends whom we love*.

a. *Que* is also sometimes predicate with an intransitive, especially *être*: thus, *imbécile que vous êtes fool that you are*, *ce qu'il nous faut what we lack*.

b. The participle of a compound tense following *que*

agrees in gender and number (191a) with the word to which *que* relates : thus, *les gants qu'il a achetés* *the gloves that he has bought*, *les fleurs que nous avons vues* *the flowers which we had seen*.

c. A verb having *qui* as subject is of the person of its antecedent: thus, *moi qui suis* *I who am*, *toi qui as* *thou that hast*, etc.

169. *Qui* is also used with prepositions, but generally only of persons : thus, *l'homme à qui je l'ai donné* *the man to whom I have given it*, *les amis chez qui vous demeurez* *the friends with whom you live*.

170. *a. Lequel* etc. is used with prepositions of objects other than persons: thus, *le chien auquel j'ai donné à manger* *the dog to which I have given (something) to eat*, *les maisons dans lesquelles vous demeurez* *the houses in which you dwell*.

b. Bût lequel etc. is also used as subject or direct object of a verb, in place of *qui* or *que*—generally, however, only when there is special reason for distinguishing the gender and number of the person or thing referred to : thus, *voilà l'ami de ma mère, lequel vient me voir* *here is my mother's friend, who comes to see me* (where *qui*, if used, might seem to refer to *mère* *mother*).

171. *Quoi*, when used as relative, is more often a compound relative (or relative implying also its antecedent), and taken in a general or indefinite sense : thus, *après quoi, il s'en alla* *after which, he went off*, *je ne sais quoi* *I don't know what*, *voilà de quoi il parle toujours* *that is what he is always talking about*.

a. De quoi, before an infinitive, means *wherewith* : thus, *j'ai de quoi vous amuser* *I have wherewith to amuse you* (*the means of amusing you*).

b. The interrogative adjective **quel** is also sometimes used with compound relative value : thus, **je ne sais quel livre il a** *I don't know which book he has.*

172. Instead of **qui** or **lequel** with preceding **de** is often used **dont**, meaning *of whom, of which, whose* : thus, **l'homme dont vous parlez** *the man of whom you speak*, **notre ami, dont le fils est ici** *our friend, whose son is here.*

a. If the word on which **dont** is dependent is object of a verb, it takes its regular place after the verb, however far separated from the relative : thus, **la femme dont vous avez reçu la lettre** *the woman whose letter you have received*, **le livre dont je ne connais pas le titre** *the book of which I do not know the title.*

173. The adverb **où** *where* is also often used almost as a relative pronoun, meaning *to or at or in which*, and the like : thus, **les honneurs où vous aspirez** *the honors to which you aspire*, **la douleur où je suis plongé** *the grief into which I am plunged.* And **d'où** means *from which* or *whence*, and **par où** *by which, by which route, etc.*

174. **Quiconque** *whoever, anyone who*, is an indefinite relative, generally without antecedent expressed : thus, **quiconque ment sera puni** *whoever lies shall be punished.*

175. The pronoun used as antecedent of a relative (as already pointed out, 156, 158a) is not the personal, as in English *he who, they who*, and so on, but the demonstrative, **ce** or **celui** etc.

a. **Ce qui** and **ce que** answer to English *what* or *that which*, the one as subject, the other as object (or sometimes predicate) of a verb : thus, **dites-moi ce qui vous trouble** *tell me what troubles you*, **dites-moi ce que vous voulez** *tell me what you wish*, **faites ce que je vous dis** *do what I tell you.*

b. **Celui qui** or **que** etc. means in like manner *he*

who, the one which, and so on : thus, *celui qui est dans les cieux* *he who is in the heavens*, *celle que vous aimez* *she whom you love*.

176. Note that the relative, often omitted in English, must always be expressed in French : thus, *the friends I love* *les amis que j'aime*, *the books he has bought* *les livres qu'il a achetés*.

177. **Qui**, **quoi**, and **quel**, when followed by **que** before a subjunctive, correspond to *whoever* and *whatever* with the subjunctive in English ; **qui** being used relating to persons, **quoi** as object relating to things, and **quel** as predicate adjective : thus, **qui que vous soyez**, **quoi que vous fassiez**, **quels que soient vos talents** *whoever you may be, whatever you may do, whatever be your talents*, **quoi qu'il en soit** *whatever the case may be*.

a. The same phrases are used sometimes in the sense of *any one soever*, *anything whatever*, and the like : thus, **il ne connaît qui que ce soit** *he knows nobody at all*.

INDEFINITES.

178. A few special uses of the indefinite pronouns and adjectives call for notice here.

a. **On** *one, they, people* is used as an indefinite subject : thus, **on dit** *one says, people say, they say*.

L'on is often used instead of **on** after a vowel sound, especially after *et, ou, où, que, si* ; but not if the following word begins with *l*.

179. **Aucun** and **nul** *not any, no* (*fem.* *aucune, nulle*) are used both adjectively and substantively. They both require a **ne** before the verb : see 244*d*.

180. *a.* **Autre** *other* may be used as adjective or substantive. It combines with **un** in several phases : thus, **l'un et l'autre** *the one and the other*,

i.e. *both*, l'un ou l'autre *either*, ni l'un ni l'autre *neither*.

b. It is sometimes added to *nous* or *vous* expletively, or simply to emphasize the distinction of *us* or *you* from others: thus, *nous autres Français* *we Frenchmen*, *vous autres Anglais* *you English*.

c. *Autre chose* *anything else* is common with a negative verb in the sense of *nothing else*.

181. *Quelque* *some*, *quelqu'un* *some one*, *quelque chose* *something*.

a. *Quelque* is more limited in meaning than the partitive (see 95) and may be rendered by *a little*, *a few*: thus, *des pommes* *some apples*, *quelques pommes* *a few apples*.

b. The negative correlatives to *quelqu'un* and *quelque chose* are *personne* and *rien*. These are used not only where the negation is distinct or distinctly expressed, but also often where a degree of negative sense is implied: thus, *sans voir personne* *without seeing any one*, *je le défie de rien dire de moi* *I defy him to say anything of me*.

c. *Quelque . . . que* stands in French in an attributive sense, directly qualifying the noun expressed, for the English *whatever*. It is also used adverbially in the sense of *however*, and is then, of course, invariable: thus, *quelques talents que vous ayez* *whatever talents you may have*, *quelque grands que soient vos talents* *however great your talents may be*. (For the subjunctive with *quelque—que* etc. see 272a.)

182. *Tout* *all, every* (f. *toute*, m. pl. *tous*, f. pl. *toutes*).

a. *Tout* means *all* when followed by an article: thus, *toute la ville* *all the city (the whole city)*, *toute ville* *every city*.

b. *Tout* is more general and inclusive than *chaque*: thus, *tout homme est mortel*; *chaque homme a son caractère à lui* *every man is mortal*; *each man has his own character*.

c. *Tout le monde* (literally *all the world*) is much used for *everybody*; and *tous les deux*, *tous deux* for *both*.

EXERCISE 7.

RELATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

VOCABULARY.

le gant, *the glove*
 la chambre, *the room*
 ici, *adv., here*

l'école (*f.*), *the school*
 le fruit, *the fruit*
 où, *adv., where*

I.

1. Lequel de vos amis aimez-vous? 2. J'aime tous ceux qui m'aiment aussi. 3. Est-ce que ce sont vos filles qui sont à l'école? 4. Oui, monsieur, l'une et l'autre y sont. 5. J'aime les fleurs que vous me donnez, et j'aime aussi celui qui me les donne. 6. Que cherchez-vous? 7. Je cherche les gants que j'avais à (*in*) la main. 8. Les gants dont vous parlez sont dans la chambre dans laquelle nous étions. 9. Le livre dont vous me parlez n'est pas ici. 10. Où est mon chapeau? On le cherche, monsieur. 11. Nul de mes amis n'est ici. 12. Tout le monde est maintenant à Paris. 13. Qui est l'homme à qui vous parlez? 14. Je vous donne ce que j'ai dans la main; c'est tout ce que j'ai.

II.

1. What are you looking for? 2. I am looking for my daughter who was here. 3. She whom you seek is not here. 4. Have you the books of which you are speaking? 5. I have all those of which I speak. 6. All the fruit which is here is from (*de*) my garden. 7. This gentleman has a house which is very beautiful, and in which are many rooms. 8. Who is the boy with whom you are talking? 9. I am talking

with a little boy whom I love much. 10. Are you looking for the gloves which were in your hand? 11. The gloves are not here, but some one is looking for them. 12. I am giving the flowers which I have in my hand to the sister of the girl who is here. 13. I give you all I have.

VERBS.

183. The simple forms of the French verb are the PRESENT, IMPERFECT, PRETERIT, FUTURE, and CONDITIONAL, the IMPERATIVE, the PRESENT and IMPERFECT of the subjunctive mode, the INFINITIVE, and the two PARTICIPLES, PRESENT and PAST. The uses of the tenses correspond in general to those of the English tenses, but the imperfect expresses continued past action: thus, *il avait* *he was having, kept having, used to have*, etc.; while the preterit expresses simple past action, with nothing else implied (see also 264).

184. Compound forms for all the parts of a French verb (except the imperative and the past participle) are made, as in English, by adding its past participle to the various forms of an auxiliary verb. The auxiliary is usually *avoir* *have*; but some verbs take instead *être* *be* (see 195).

a. Hence, to make any given compound form, the corresponding simple form of *avoir* (or sometimes of *être*) is to be taken, and the past participle of the principal verb added to it.

b. It must always be borne in mind that in any compound form it is the auxiliary that is the real verb, the added par-

ticiples being only a verbal adjective. All rules, therefore, as to the place of negative words, subject and object pronouns, and so on, given with reference to the verb, apply to the auxiliary and not to the participle in compound forms.

185. The compounds of the present and imperfect tenses are best called, as in English, the PERFECT and PLUPERFECT; that of the preterit, the PAST ANTERIOR; those of the future and conditional, the FUTURE PERFECT and CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

a. In many grammars, the indicative perfect is called the past indefinite (Fr. *passé indéfini*). It is very often used where in English we have the preterit; and especially of anything that has happened during this day, or during any period of which the present is viewed as a part.

THE AUXILIARIES AVOIR AND ÊTRE.

186. The compound forms of *avoir* have are made, as in English, with *avoir* itself as auxiliary. The simple and compound forms are given together in full below.

COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF *avoir* have.

INFINITIVE.

avoir, have, to have

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

avoir eu, to have had

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

ayant, having

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

ayant eu, having had

PAST (OR PASSIVE) PARTICIPLE.

eu, had

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

j'ai, I have
tu as, thou hast
il a, he has
nous avons, we have
vous avez, you have
ils ont, they have

PERFECT.

j'ai eu, I have had
tu as eu, thou hast had
il a eu, he has had
nous avons eu, we have had
vous avez eu, you have had
ils ont eu, they have had

IMPERFECT.

j'avais, *I had, was having, etc.*
 tu avais, *thou hadst, etc.*
 il avait, *he had, etc.*
 nous avions, *we had, etc.*
 vous aviez, *you had, etc.*
 ils avaient, *they had, etc.*

PRETERIT.

j'eus, *I had*
 tu eus, *thou hadst*
 il eut, *he had*
 nous eûmes, *we had*
 vous eûtes, *you had*
 ils eurent, *they had*

FUTURE.

j'aurai, *I shall have*
 tu auras, *thou wilt have*
 il aura, *he will have*
 nous aurons, *we shall have*
 vous aurez, *you will have*
 ils auront, *they will have*

CONDITIONAL.

j'aurais, *I should have*
 tu aurais, *thou wouldst have*
 il aurait, *he would have*
 nous aurions, *we should have*
 vous auriez, *you would have*
 ils auraient, *they would have*

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais eu, *I had had*
 tu avais eu, *thou hadst had*
 il avait eu, *he had had*
 nous avions eu, *we had had*
 vous aviez eu, *you had had*
 ils avaient eu, *they had had*

PAST ANTERIOR.

j'eus eu, *I had had*
 tu eus eu, *thou hadst had*
 il eut eu, *he had had*
 nous eûmes eu, *we had had*
 vous eûtes eu, *you had had*
 ils eurent eu, *they had had*

FUTURE PERFECT.

j'aurai eu, *I shall have had*
 tu auras eu, *thou wilt have had*
 il aura eu, *he will have had*
 nous aurons eu, *we shall have had*
 vous aurez eu, *you will have had*
 ils auront eu, *they will have had*

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

j'aurais eu, *I should have had*
 tu aurais eu, *thou wouldst have had*
 il aurait eu, *he would have had*
 nous aurions eu, *we should have had*
 vous auriez eu, *you would have had*
 ils auraient eu, *they would have had*

IMPERATIVE.

aie, *have, have thou*
 ayons, *let us have*
 ayez, *have, have ye*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

que j'aie, <i>that I may have</i>	que j'aie eu, <i>that I may have had</i>
que tu aies, <i>that thou mayest have</i>	que tu aies eu, <i>that thou mayest have had</i>
qu'il ait, <i>that he may have</i>	qu'il ait eu, <i>that he may have had</i>
que nous ayons, <i>that we may have</i>	que nous ayons eu, <i>that we may have had</i>
que vous ayez, <i>that you may have</i>	que vous ayez eu, <i>that you may have had</i>
qu'ils aient, <i>that they may have</i>	qu'ils aient eu, <i>that they may etc.</i>

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse, <i>that I might have</i>	que j'eusse eu, <i>that I might have had</i>
que tu eusses, <i>that thou mightest have</i>	que tu eusses eu, <i>that thou mightest have had</i>
qu'il eût, <i>that he might have</i>	qu'il eût eu, <i>that he might have had</i>
que nous eussions, <i>that we might have</i>	que nous eussions eu, <i>that we might have had</i>
que vous eussiez, <i>that you might have</i>	que vous eussiez eu, <i>that you might have had</i>
qu'ils eussent, <i>that they might have</i>	qu'ils eussent eu, <i>that they might have had</i>

187. *a.* Every imperfect in the language without exception is inflected with the endings -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

b. All preterits in the language, without exception, have the plural endings -mes, -tes, -rent, and before the first two of these endings they have a circumflexed vowel (either û, or â, or î); and all excepting those of the first regular conjugation (200) have -s, -s, -t in the singular.

c. Every future in the language, without exception, is inflected like that of **avoir**, with the endings -ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont, and with **r** before the endings.

d. Every conditional in the language, without exception, is inflected like that of **avoir**, with the endings -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient—which are precisely the same with

the imperfect endings ; and these endings are invariably preceded by **r**.

e. While the English imperative may be used either with or without a subject expressed, the French never allows one. The third persons imperative are supplied from the present subjunctive.

188. *a.* It is customary to prefix **que** *that* to the inflection of the subjunctive tenses in French grammars, because a subjunctive usually, though not always, has that conjunction before it.

b. The 3d persons of the present subjunctive are often used in an imperative sense.

c. Every imperfect subjunctive in the language, without exception, is inflected with the endings **-sse**, **-sses**, **-t**, **-ssions**, **-ssiez**, **-ssent**, and with a circumflexed vowel (**û** or **ô** or **î**) before the **t** of the 3d singular.

d. The subjunctive tenses are by no means always to be rendered in English with the auxiliaries *may* and *might*, but sometimes with others, as *should* and *would*, and sometimes by simple subjunctive or even indicative forms (see 268 etc.).

189. *a.* The infinitive always ends in **r** or **rè**.

b. The "sign of the infinitive," corresponding to the English *to*, is either **à** *to* or (quite as often) **de** *of*. As to the use of the one or the other of these, see 277-80. But the French infinitive is often also (like the English) used without a sign, as subject of a verb, after various verbs, and after prepositions, especially **pour** *in order to* (literally *for, for to*): thus, **parler est mieux** *to speak is better*, **il veut avoir** *he wishes to have*, **pour être** *in order to be*.

190. *a.* The present participle invariably ends in **ant**.

b. This participle, when used as a participle, has no variation for gender or number. Often, however, it is used as an adjective, and then is varied like any other adjective: thus, **une charmante femme** *a charming woman*, **des yeux perçants** *piercing eyes*.

c. This participle (i.e. apparently: really a gerund of the same form) is also very commonly used after the preposition **en**: thus, **en étant** *in being, in the act of being, while being* (and often best rendered *being* simply).

191. The past participle is variable for gender and number, like any ordinary adjective.

a. It is for the most part unvaried, or has its masculine singular form, in the compound forms of the verb when made with **avoir**. But it is a rule in French that if a compound verb-form has a direct object, and that object stands before the verb, the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number: thus, *quels livres avez-vous eus* *what books have you had?* *les fleurs que j'ai eues* *the flowers which I have had*, and so on.

192. In French (as in English) the subject-pronoun is put after the verb in asking a question; and it must always be joined to the verb by a hyphen.

a. If the 3d pers. sing. of any verb ends in a vowel, a *t* is added to it, with a hyphen before and after, whenever it is followed by the pronoun *il* or *elle* (or by *on*: 178).

PRES. INDIC.

ai-je, <i>have I?</i>	avons-nous, <i>have we?</i>
as-tu, <i>hast thou?</i>	avez-vous, <i>have you?</i>
a-t-il, <i>has he?</i>	ont-ils, <i>have they?</i>

PLUPERF. INDIC.

avais-je eu, <i>had I had?</i>	avions-nous eu, <i>had we had?</i>
avais-tu eu, <i>hadst thou had?</i>	aviez-vous eu, <i>had you had?</i>
avait-il eu, <i>had he had?</i>	avaient-ils eu, <i>had they had?</i>

193. But if the subject of a verb used interrogatively is a noun, the noun is generally put first, and then a corresponding pronoun is put after the verb: that is, the subject is first stated, and then the question is asked about it by means of a pronoun.

Thus, *has the man a book?* is not *a l'homme un livre?*

but l'homme a-t-il un livre ? (literally, *the man, has he a book ?*)

For the negative with the verb, see 241 etc.

EXERCISE 8.

AVOIR.

VOCABULARY.

hier, <i>yesterday</i>	aujourd'hui, <i>to-day</i>
demain, <i>to-morrow</i>	assez, <i>enough</i>
le morceau, <i>the piece</i>	l'argent (<i>m.</i>), <i>money, silver</i>
ne . . . rien, <i>nothing</i> (see 244)	ne . . . plus, <i>no longer</i> (see 244)
si, <i>if</i>	quoique, <i>although</i> (see 272)

I.

1. J'ai un morceau de pain et j'aurai aussi de la viande. 2. Avez-vous eu assez de pain? 3. Nous en aurons eu assez. 4. Qu'aviez-vous dans la main? 5. Nous n'avons plus les fleurs que nous avons eues hier. 6. Si nous n'avions pas d'argent, nous n'aurions pas de pain. 7. Cet homme a eu beaucoup d'argent, mais il n'en aura plus. 8. S'il avait eu d'argent, il aurait eu un beau cheval. 9. Quoique cette jeune fille ait de très belles robes, elle n'est pas heureux. 10. Elle aura demain tous les livres que j'ai eus hier. 11. Quoiqu'ils les aient tous, je n'en aurai pas. 12. Ayez du pain, monsieur. 13. Nous avons eu du pain. mais il n'a rien eu.

II.

1. Who has the books which you had yesterday? 2. We had some books yesterday, but we shall not have any (*en*) to-morrow. 3. Although these women have pretty flowers in their garden, they do not give

me any. 4. Will the boy have a new hat? 5. If he had had money, he would have had a new hat. 6. Though we have plenty of money, we have no horses. 7. We shall have some horses to-morrow. 8. Have a piece of bread. 9. We shall have had bread enough; but we shall have no meat. 10. If we had money, we should have a new house. 11. Although we no longer had money, we should have bread enough. 12. We shall have nothing. 13. He had had the horses yesterday, but they will have had them to-day.

194. Être *be* also makes its compound forms with the help of *avoir*. Its full conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE.	PERFECT INFINITIVE.
être, <i>be, to be</i>	avoir été, <i>to have been</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
étant, <i>being</i>	ayant été, <i>having been</i>
PAST (OR PASSIVE) PARTICIPLE.	
été, <i>been</i>	
INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PERFECT.
je suis, <i>I am</i>	j'ai été <i>I have been</i>
tu es	tu as été
il est	il a été
nous sommes	nous avons été
vous êtes	vous avez été
ils sont	ils ont été
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
j'étais, <i>I was, used to be, etc.</i>	j'avais été, <i>I had been</i>
tu étais	tu avais été
il était	il avait été
nous étions	nous avions été
vous étiez	vous aviez été
ils étaient	ils avaient été

PRETERIT.

je fus, *I was*
 tu fus
 il fut
 nous fûmes
 vous fûtes
 ils furent

FUTURE.

je serai, *I shall be*
 tu seras
 il sera
 nous serons
 vous serez
 ils seront

CONDITIONAL.

je serais, *I should be*
 tu serais
 il serait
 nous serions
 vous seriez
 ils seraient

sois, *be, be thou*

PRESENT.

que je sois, *that I may be*
 que tu sois
 qu'il soit
 que nous soyons
 que vous soyez
 qu'ils soient

IMPERFECT.

que je fusse, *that I might be*
 que tu fusses
 qu'il fût

PAST ANTERIOR.

j'eus été, *I had been*
 tu eus été
 il eut été
 nous eûmes été
 vous eûtes été
 ils eurent été

FUTURE PERFECT.

j'aurai été, *I shall have been*
 tu auras été
 il aura été
 nous aurons été
 vous aurez été
 ils auront été

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

j'aurais été, *I should have been*
 tu aurais été
 il aurait été
 nous aurions été
 vous auriez été
 ils auraient été

IMPERATIVE.

soyons, *let us be*
 soyez, *be, be ye*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

que j'aie été, *that I may have been*
 que tu aies été
 qu'il ait été
 que nous ayons été
 que vous ayez été
 qu'ils aient été

PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse été, *that I might have been*
 que tu eusses été
 qu'il eût été

IMPERFECT.

que nous fussions
que vous fussiez
qu'ils fussent

PLUPERFECT.

que nous eussions été
que vous eussiez été
qu'ils eussent été

195. All transitive verbs, and a great majority of the intransitive and neuter verbs, take **avoir** as auxiliary; but **être** is used with all passive and reflexive verbs.

a. **Être** is also used as auxiliary with a few intransitives, of which the commonest are : *aller go, venir come* (and its compounds), *arriver arrive, happen, entrer enter, naître be born, mourir die, tomber fall*, etc.

b. A few intransitives take sometimes **avoir** and sometimes **être**—**avoir** when there is had in view especially the performance of an act, but **être** when the resulting condition. Such verbs are especially those that signify a distinct change of place or condition. Thus : *il a passé à quatre heures he went by at four o'clock, il est passé et disparu he has gone by and disappeared.*

c. When an intransitive has **être** as auxiliary its participle in the compound tenses agrees in number and gender with the subject of the verb. The participle with **avoir** remains unvaried.

196. In phrases signifying bodily conditions which one feels or is conscious of, **avoir** with a noun is used in French where the English has the verb *be* with an adjective : thus,

j'ai faim, *I am hungry* (literally, *I have hunger*)

il a soif, *he is thirsty* (literally, *he has thirst*)

n'avez-vous pas sommeil, *are you not sleepy?*

nous avons froid, *we are cold* vous avez chaud, *you are warm*

tu avais peur, *thou wast afraid* ils auront honte, *they will be ashamed*

a. Similar phrases are **avoir mal** *à have a pain or ache in*, **avoir raison** *be right or in the right*, **avoir tort** *be wrong or in the wrong*: thus, **j'ai mal à la tête** *I have the headache*, **vous avez raison et j'ai tort** *you are right and I am wrong*.

b. In a corresponding manner, questions as to one's personal condition are asked and answered with **avoir**: thus, **qu'avez-vous** *what is the matter with you?* (literally, *what have you?*) and **avez-vous quelque chose** *is anything the matter with you?* (literally, *have you anything?*) and **je n'ai rien** *nothing is the matter with me* (literally, *I have nothing*).

197. Être followed by *à to* is used in the sense of *belong to*. Thus, **à qui est-il** *whose is he?* **c'est à moi** *it is mine*.

EXERCISE 9.

Être be.

VOCABULARY.

quand, *when*
la ville, *the city, town*
malade, *sick*
méchant, -ante, *naughty*
la rose, *the rose*

parceque, *because*
malheureux, euse, *unhappy*
aveugle, *blind*
pauvre, *poor*
paresseux, -euse, *lazy*

I.

1. Mon ami a été très riche, mais il est maintenant pauvre et malheureux. 2. Il serait heureux s'il n'était pas aveugle. 3. Est-ce que vos amis ont été à la ville quand vous y étiez? 4. Ils n'y ont pas été, mais ils y seront à trois heures. 5. Je serai très heureux, quand nous serons à Paris. 6. Qu'as-tu, mon enfant? J'ai faim, madame. 7. Cet enfant sera malade si on ne lui donne pas de pain. 8. Quoiqu'il

ait bien soif, il n'a pas faim. 9. Est-ce que ces roses sont à votre amie? 10. Non, monsieur, elles ne sont pas à elle ; elles sont à vous. 11. N'ayez pas peur, madame, ce cheval est très bon. 12. Cette dame a honte, parcequ'elle a eu bien peur. 13. Quoique l'enfant soit très méchant, il n'a pas honte. 14. Sois bon et tu seras heureux.

II.

1. Will those ladies be here to-morrow? 2. They were here yesterday, but they will be in town to-morrow. 3. To-morrow I shall have been at Paris three days. 4. Although they were at Paris three days, they were not happy there. 5. Your friend would be at school if she were not lazy. 6. She was ashamed, because she had not been at school. 7. Are you hungry, my children? 8. No, we are not hungry, but we are sleepy. 9. Do not be lazy when you are at school. 10. Though they are lazy, they are not bad children. 11. Let us be lazy and happy. 12. Whose are these roses? 13. They are my friend's; they are not mine. 14. You were right; the roses were not ours. 15. You were cold, because you had no warm dresses.

THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

198. There are three regular conjugations of French verbs ; their infinitives end respectively in 1. *er* ; 2. *ir* ; 3. *re* : thus, *donner give, finir finish, vendre sell*.

a. There are also many irregular verbs having these same endings in the infinitive, and others having *oir*. Half-a-

dozen of those ending in *oir* in the infinitive are in many grammars called another regular conjugation (the third, those in *re* being reckoned as the fourth). The irregular verbs will be given further on.

199. All the forms of regular verbs (and also most of those of irregular verbs) may be inferred from five leading forms, which are therefore called the **PRINCIPAL PARTS** of the verb. These are I. the infinitive; II. the present participle; III. the past or passive participle; IV. the present indicative; V. the preterit indicative.

a. In learning a French verb, then, regular or irregular, the first thing is to learn and make familiar the principal parts.

I. From the infinitive are made the future and conditional, by adding respectively *ai* and *ais* (the *e* of the infinitive ending *re* being lost): thus,

INFINITIVE	donner	finir	vendre
FUTURE	donnerai	finirai	vendrai
CONDITIONAL	donnerais	finirais	vendrais

II. From the present participle may be found the imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive, by changing *ant* into *ais* and *e* respectively: thus,

PRES. PPLE	donnant	finissant	vendant
IMPF. INDIC.	donnais	finissais	vendais
PRES. SUBJ.	donne	finisse	vende

a. In many verbs, the plural persons of the present indicative need also to be inferred from the present participle: thus, *finissons* etc. from *finissant*: see 227*b*.

III. From the past participle are made, with the auxiliary verb *avoir* or *être* (see 195), the

various compound forms—the perfect infinitive, perfect indicative, and so on : thus,

PAST PPLE	donné	fini	vendu
PERF. INFIN.	avoir donné	avoir fini	avoir vendu
PERF. INDIC.	j'ai donné	j'ai fini	j'ai vendu
	etc. etc.	etc. etc.	etc. etc.

IV. From the present indicative may be found the imperative : thus,

PRES. INDIC.	donne	finis	vends
IMPV.	donne	finis	vends

a. In general, the three persons of the imperative are the same with the corresponding persons of the present indicative ; only, in the first conjugation, the final *s* of the 2d sing. impv. is usually (200*d*) lost, so that its form agrees with that of the 1st sing. indicative.

V. From the preterit indicative may be made the imperfect subjunctive, by changing final *s* (in the first conjugation, that of the 2d sing.) into *sse* : thus,

PRET. INDIC.	donnai, donnas	finis	vendis
IMPF. SUBJ.	donnasse	finisse	vendisse

a. Verbs of the first conjugation are the only ones in the language that do not end in *s* in the 1st sing. preterit.

FIRST REGULAR CONJUGATION.

200. The first regular conjugation, with infinitive ending in *er*, contains the great majority of all the verbs in the language. As a model of its inflection may be taken the verb *donner* *give*.

a. The synopsis of its principal parts and the parts derived from them is as follows :

donner	donnant	donné	donne	donnai
donnerai	donnais	avoir donné	donne	donnasse
donnerais	donne	etc. etc.		

b. The complete inflection of the simple tenses is (with infinitive and participles prefixed) :

INFINITIVE, *give, to give*

donner (à donner, de donner)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, *giving*
donnant

PAST PARTICIPLE, *given*
donné

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, *I give, do give, am giving, etc.*

je donne	nous donnons
tu donnes	vous donnez
il donne	ils donnent

IMPERFECT, *I gave, was giving, etc.*

je donnais	nous donnions
tu donnais	vous donniez
il donnait	ils donnaient

PRETERIT, *I gave, did give, etc.*

je donnai	nous donnâmes
tu donnas	vous donnâtes
il donna	ils donnèrent

FUTURE, *I shall or will give, etc.*

je donnerai	nous donnerons
tu donneras	vous donnerez
il donnera	ils donneront

CONDITIONAL, *I should or would give, etc.*

je donnerais	nous donnerions
tu donnerais	vous donneriez
il donnerait	ils donneraient

IMPERATIVE, *give, give thou, etc.*

	donnons
donne	donnez

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *that I may give, etc.*

que je donne	que nous donnions
que tu donnes	que vous donniez
qu'il donne	qu'ils donnent

IMPERFECT, *that I might give, etc.*

que je donnasse	que nous donnassions
que tu donnasses	que vous donnassiez
qu'il donnât	qu'ils donnassent

c. Of the compound forms, made with the auxiliary *avoir*, it will be sufficient to give the synopsis, the inflection of the auxiliary being already familiar : thus,

PERFECT INFINITIVE, *to have given*

avoir donné

PERFECT PARTICIPLE, *having given*

ayant donné

INDICATIVE PERFECT, *I have given, etc.*

j'ai donné etc.

PLUPERFECT, *I had given, etc.*

j'avais donné etc.

PAST ANTERIOR, *I had given, etc.*

j'eus donné etc.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have given, etc.*

j'aurai donné etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT, *I should have given, etc.*

j'aurais donné etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT, *that I may have given, etc.*

que j'aie donné etc.

PLUPERFECT, *that I might have given, etc.*

que j'eusse donné etc.

d. The 2d sing. impv. of the first conj. adds an *s* when followed by the object-pronouns *en* or *y*.

e. If the 1st sing. present indicative or imperfect subjunctive (the latter, of any conjugation) comes to be followed by its subject, it takes an acute accent on its final *e* (17): thus, *donné-je do I give? donnassé-je should I give?*

201. Many verbs of the first conjugation, otherwise regular, have to undergo in inflection certain changes of spelling, in accordance with the general rules of the language: thus,

202. Since no word in French may end in two silent syllables (17), and their occurrence anywhere in a word is generally avoided, therefore—

a. Verbs having in the infinitive a mute syllable before the final syllable have to give the former a full pronunciation whenever in inflection the syllable after it becomes mute.

b. This is usually done by putting a grave accent upon the *e* of the syllable in question.

Thus, from the infinitive *mener lead*, we have *je mène, tu mèneras, il mènerait, mène, qu'ils mènent*, etc.; but *nous menons, je menais, tu menas, qu'il menât*, etc. Also, from *acheter buy*, we have *il achète, nous achèterons, que tu achètes*, etc.; but *vous achetez, il acheta, achetons, que nous achetions*, etc.

c. But a few verbs double instead the consonant (*t* or *l*) following the *e*.

Thus, from *jeter throw*, we have *je jette, tu jetteras, il jetterait, jette, qu'ils jettent*, etc.; and from *appeler call*, we have *il appelle, nous appellerons, que tu appelles* etc.

The verbs thus doubling the consonant are *jeter* (and its compounds) and *cacher*; *appeler, chanceler, étinceler, renouveler*, and *ensorceler*.

203. Since the accent on an *e* followed by a silent syllable is regularly and usually the grave (16)—therefore

a. Verbs having in the infinitive an acute *é* before the final syllable (except *créer create*) change the accent to grave (*è*) when the next syllable be-

comes mute—except, however, in the future and conditional, where the acute is retained.

Thus from the verb *céder* *cede*, we have *je cède*, but *nous cédon*s, etc.

204. Verbs having *c* or *g* (pronounced soft) before final *er* of the infinitive retain the soft sound of these letters through their whole conjugation; and this is signified by writing a cedilla under the *c* (thus, *ç*: 6), and by keeping an *e* after the *g* (48*c*), wherever in conjugation those letters come to be followed by *a* or *o*.

Thus, from *placer* *place*, and *manger*, *eat*, we have *je place*, and *nous plaçons*; *je mange*, and *nous mangeons*; *je plaçais*, and *nous placions*; *je mangeais*, and *nous mangions*; *nous plaçâmes* and *ils placèrent*; *nous mangeâmes*, and *ils mangèrent* and so on.

205. Since *y* (= double *i*) does not usually stand before a mute *e* (27*b*)—therefore

a. Verbs having a *y* before the final *er* of the infinitive change it to *i* when in conjugation it comes to be followed by a mute *e*.

b. Thus, for example, from the verb *payer* *pay* we have *je paie*, *nous payons*, *je paierai*, *ils paient*, etc.

c. But verbs in *eyer* preserve the *y* throughout: thus, *je grasseye* (not *grasseie*), etc. And some writers retain the *y* after *a*: thus, *je paye*, etc.

206. When the *i* of a verb ending in *ier* comes to be followed by *i* in inflection (namely, in 1st and 2d plur. impf. indic. and pres. subj.), the two *i*'s remain unchanged (do not become *y*). Thus, from *prier* *pray*, *oublier* *forget*, we have *nous priions*, *vous priez*; *que nous oubliions*, *que vous oubliiez*.

EXERCISE 10.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

VOCABULARY.

trouver, <i>find</i>	apporter, <i>bring</i>
acheter, <i>buy</i>	manger, <i>eat</i>
oublier, <i>forget</i>	mener, <i>lead</i>
la journée, <i>the day</i>	le gâteau, <i>the cake</i>
la brebis, <i>the sheep</i>	la vache, <i>the cow</i>
la forêt, <i>the forest</i>	le champ, <i>the field</i>

I.

1. Qu'avez-vous donné à cette pauvre femme? 2. Je lui ai donné une bonne vache. 3. L'homme a-t-il trouvé ses brebis? 4. Il les a cherchées partout, mais il ne les a pas trouvées. 5. Quand il les aura trouvées, il les mènera aux champs. 6. Il travaillait toute la journée, et à midi il mangea un morceau de pain. 7. Quoique nous achetions beaucoup de gâteaux, nous n'en mangeons jamais. 8. Si vous trouvez des roses, apportez-les-moi. 9. Nous donnerons à notre mère toutes les roses que nous aurons trouvées dans la forêt. 10. Les enfants ont honte parcequ'ils ont mangé tous les gâteaux. 11. S'ils les ont tous mangés, on leur en achètera d'autres. 12. Quoique vous m'oubliiez, je vous ai bien aimé. 13. Où menez-vous la vache que vous avez achetée? 14. Si je l'achète, je la mènerai au champ de mon père.

II.

1. Did you find the cows you were looking for? 2. We were looking for our cow in the forest, but we did not find it there. 3. Did you lead it to the forest? 4. If I had found it, I should have led it to the field.

5. Where are the cakes which you bought yesterday ?
 6. I gave them to the poor man who was working in the garden. 7. Did you find the cakes and the flowers I had brought you ? 8. We ate the cakes, and we will give the roses to our mother. 9. Let us buy some cakes, and let us give them to the children. 10. Although we give her cakes, she does not eat them. 11. She is sick to-day, but she will eat them to-morrow. 12. Do not forget your friends, but love them well. 13. Though he may have forgotten me, I will never forget him. 14. Give him the letter you brought.

SECOND REGULAR CONJUGATION.

207. The verbs of the second conjugation, with infinitive ending in *ir*, are much fewer than those of the first. As model of the second conjugation we will take the verb *finir* *finish*.

a. The synopsis of principal and derived parts is :

<i>finir</i>	<i>finissant</i>	<i>fini</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>finis</i>
<i>finirai</i>	<i>finissais</i>	<i>avoir fini</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>finisse</i>
<i>finirais</i>	<i>finisse</i>	etc., etc.		

b. The full inflection of the simple tenses is :

INFINITIVE, *finish, to finish*
finir (*à finir, de finir*)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, *finishing*
finissant

PAST PARTICIPLE, *finished*
fini

INDICATIVE.
 PRESENT, *I finish, etc.*

je finis
tu finis
il finit

nous finissons
vous finissez
ils finissent

IMPERFECT, *I was finishing, etc.*

je finissais	nous finissions
tu finissais	vous finissiez
il finissait	ils finissaient

PRETERIT, *I finished, etc.*

je finis	nous finîmes
tu finis	vous finîtes
il finit	ils finirent

FUTURE, *I shall finish, etc.*

je finirai	nous finirons
tu finiras	vous finirez
il finira	ils finiront

CONDITIONAL, *I should finish, etc.*

je finirais	nous finirions
tu finirais	vous finiriez
il finirait	ils finiraient

IMPERATIVE, *finish, etc.*

	finissons
finis	finissez

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *that I may finish, etc.*

que je finisse	que nous finissions
que tu finisses	que vous finissiez
qu'il finisse	qu'ils finissent

IMPERFECT, *that I might finish, etc.*

que je finisse	que nous finissions
que tu finisses	que vous finissiez
qu'il finît	qu'ils finissent

c. Of the compound tenses, the brief synopsis is :

PERF. INFIN.	avoir fini, <i>to have finished</i>
PERF. PART.	ayant fini, <i>having finished</i>
INDIC. PERF.	j'ai fini, <i>I have finished</i>
PLUPF.	j'avais fini, <i>I had finished</i>
PAST ANT.	j'eus fini, <i>I had finished</i>
FUT. PERF.	j'aurai fini, <i>I shall have finished</i>
COND. PERF.	j'aurais fini, <i>I should have finished</i>

SUBJ. PERF.	que j'aie fini, <i>that I may have finished</i>
PLUPF.	que j'eusse fini, <i>that I might have finished</i>

d. Note that, of the simple tenses, the present and preterit indicative are alike in the singular, but different in the plural; also, that the present and imperfect subjunctive are alike throughout, except in the 3d singular.

208. The verb **hair** *hate* loses its diæresis (that is, has its **a** and **i** united into a diphthong) in the singular persons of the present indicative and of the imperative. These two tenses are thus inflected:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
je hais	nous haïssons		haïssons
tu hais	vous haïssez	hais	haïssez
il hait	ils haïssent		

THIRD REGULAR CONJUGATION.

209. The verbs of the third conjugation, with infinitive ending in **re**, are but few in number. As model of their conjugation may be taken the verb **vendre** *sell*.

a. The synopsis of principal and derived parts is:

vendre	vendant	vendu	vends	vendis
vendrai	vendrais	avoir vendu	vends	vendis
vendrais	vende	etc. etc.		

b. The full inflection of the simple tenses is:

INFINITIVE, *sell; to sell*

vendre (à vendre, de vendre)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, *selling*
vendant

PAST PARTICIPLE, *sold*
vendu

INDICATIVE.
PRESENT, *I sell, etc.*

je vends
tu vends
il vend

nous vendons
vous vendez
ils vendent

IMPERFECT, *I was selling, etc.*

je vendais	nous vendions
tu vendais	vous vendiez
il vendait	ils vendaient

PRETERIT, *I sold, etc.*

je vendis	nous vendîmes
tu vendis	vous vendîtes
il vendit	ils vendirent

FUTURE, *I shall sell, etc.*

je vendrai	nous vendrons
tu vendras	vous vendrez
il vendra	ils vendront

CONDITIONAL, *I should sell, etc.*

je vendrais	nous vendrions
tu vendrais	vous vendriez
il vendrait	ils vendraient

IMPERATIVE, *sell, etc.*

	vendons
vends	vendez

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *that I may sell, etc.*

que je vende	que nous vendions
que tu vendes	que vous vendiez
qu'il vende	qu'ils vendent

IMPERFECT, *that I might sell, etc.*

que je vendisse	que nous vendissions
que tu vendisses	que vous vendissiez
qu'il vendît	qu'ils vendissent

c. Of the compound tenses, the brief synopsis is :

PERF. INFIN.	avoir vendu, <i>to have sold</i>
PERF. PART.	ayant vendu, <i>having sold</i>
INDIC. PERF.	j'ai vendu, <i>I have sold</i>
PLUPF.	j'avais vendu, <i>I had sold</i>
PAST ANT.	j'eus vendu, <i>I had sold</i>

FUT. PERF.	j'aurai vendu, <i>I shall have sold</i>
COND. PERF.	j'aurais vendu, <i>I should have sold</i>
SUBJ. PERF.	que j'aie vendu, <i>that I may have sold</i>
PLUPF.	que j'eusse vendu, <i>that I might have sold</i>

d. Notice that the verbs of this conjugation have different vowels in the endings of the preterit and of the past participle: thus, **vendis, vendu**. In nearly all other verbs, regular and irregular, these two forms agree in vowel.

210. Two or three verbs of this conjugation have slight irregularities, which are best pointed out here.

a. **Vaincre** *conquer* is perfectly regular to the ear, but is necessarily spelt with **qu** instead of **c** before **e** and **i** (58a), and then also before **a** and **o**; the **c** remaining only before **u**, before a consonant, and as final. The synopsis of principal and derived parts is as follows :

vaincre	vainquant	vaincu	vaincs	vainquis
vaincrai	vainquais	avoir vaincu	vaincs	vainquisse
vaincrais	vainque	etc. etc.		

The pres. indicative and imperative (in which alone any change of spelling occurs in inflection) are as follows :

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
je vaincs	nous vainquons		vainquons
tu vaincs	vous vainquez	vaincs	vainquez
il vaine	ils vainquent		

The compound **convaincre** *convince* is conjugated in the same manner.

b. **Rompre** *break* adds a **t** in the 3d sing. indic. present : thus, **il rompt** (not **romp**); in all other respects it is regular.

c. **Battre** *beat* loses one of its two **t**'s in the singular of the pres. indicative and of the imperative, which are thus inflected :

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
je bats	nous battons		battons
tu bats	vous battez	bats	battez
il bat	ils battent		

The rest is regular.

EXERCISE 11.

VERBS OF THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.

VOCABULARY.

choisir, *choose*haïr, *hate*perdre, *lose*rendre, *return, give back*la tâche, *the task*la lettre, *the letter*pourquoi, *why?*bâtir, *build*attendre, *await, expect*entendre, *hear*le maître, *the master, teacher*la voix, *the voice*encore, *still, again*

I.

1. Les enfants n'ont-ils pas fini leur tâche? 2. Le maître les a punis parcequ'ils ne l'avaient pas finie. 3. Ils haïssent leur maître, parcequ'il les punit. 4. Si nous ne finissons pas notre tâche aujourd'hui, nous le finirons demain. 5. Pourquoi vendîtes-vous la maison que vous avez bâtie? 6. Nous la vendîmes parceque nous avons perdu notre argent. 7. Quoique nous perdissions tout notre argent, nous ne vendrions point notre maison. 8. Qu'attendez-vous, monsieur? 9. J'attends une lettre de ma fille. 10. Entendiez-vous la voix de cette jeune fille? 11. Je l'ai entendue hier, et je l'entendrai encore demain. 12. Cet homme attend son ami qui lui rendra l'argent qu'il lui a donné. 13. Il attendait toute la journée, mais il ne vendait rien. 14. Choisissez un gâteau, et je vous l'achèterai. 15. Est-ce que vous bâtissiez une maison à la ville? 16. J'y bâtissais une maison, mais je l'ai finie et vendue. 17. Ayant perdu son argent, il n'achètera plus rien.

II.

1. Have you finished your task? 2. No, but I shall have finished it to-morrow. 3. When you finish this book, choose another. 4. We will not choose a history, because we hate history. 5. My father built a new church for the town, and he will build us a new house. 6. Were you choosing chairs for your new house? 7. We were expecting a man who sells chairs, and who will sell us some. 8. Why do they not build a new house? 9. They have lost their money, and have sold their house. 10. Although they lost all their money, they did not sell their house. 11. I heard a voice in the house, but I hear it no longer. 12. His friends gave him back the house which he had sold. 13. When you have finished the letter, give it back to me. 14. Having finished the book, I will sell it to you. 15. We punish you because you lost what we gave you. 16. Do not punish me; I found it yesterday and I will give it back to you.

PASSIVE VERBS.

211. The forms of the PASSIVE conjugation of a verb are made in French precisely as in English : namely, by prefixing the auxiliary *être* *be* to a past participle.

a. To make, then, any given passive form of a verb, add to the corresponding form of *être* the past or passive participle of that verb : thus, *he was praised* *il était loué*, *he would have been praised* *il aurait été loué*.

b. The participle agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb: thus, *she was praised elle était louée, they (m.) would have been praised ils auraient été loués.*

c. Note, however, that (132*a*), if **vous** is used to represent a single person, the participle agrees with it only in gender: thus, *you (sing. f.) will be praised, vous serez louée.*

212. a. Taking as an example the verb *louer* *praise*, the synopsis of simple passive tenses is as follows:

INFINITIVE.

être loué (louée, loués, louées), *be praised*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

étant loué (etc.), *being praised*

INDIC. PRES., je suis loué (etc.), *I am praised*

IMPF., j'étais loué (etc.), *I was praised*

PRET., je fus loué (etc.), *I was praised*

FUT., je serai loué (etc.), *I shall be praised*

COND., je serais loué (etc.), *I should be praised*

IMPERATIVE, sois loué (etc.), *be praised*

SUBJ. PRES., que je sois loué (etc.), *that I may be praised*

IMPF., que je fasse loué (etc.), *that I might be praised*

b. The synopsis of compound passive tenses is:

PERF. INFIN., avoir été loué (etc.), *to have been praised*

PERF. PART., ayant été loué (etc.), *having been praised*

INDIC. PERF., j'ai été loué (etc.), *I have been praised*

PLUPF., j'avais été loué (etc.), *I had been praised*

PAST ANT., j'eus été loué (etc.), *I had been praised*

FUT. PERF., j'aurai été loué (etc.), *I shall have been praised*

COND. PERF., j'aurais été loué (etc.), *I should have been praised*

SUBJ. PERF., que j'aie été loué (etc.), *that I may have been praised*

PLUPF., que j'eusse été loué (etc.), *that I might have been praised*

213. After a passive verb, *by* is generally represented by *par*; but sometimes also by *de*, if the verb expresses a mental action or feeling: thus, *il est aimé de tout le monde* *he is loved by everybody*, *il fut trouvé par le chien* *he was found by the dog*.

214. The passive is less used in French than in English; instead of it often stand active verbs with the indefinite subject *on* (178), or reflexive verbs (215).

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

215. A verb is made reflexive, as in English, by adding to it an object-pronoun corresponding in person and number to the subject.

a. Reflexive verbs are a much more marked and important class in French than in English. Some verbs are reflexive exclusively, or nearly so; others are often such; and almost any transitive verb, and some intransitives, may upon occasion be used reflexively; but the conjugation of them all is the same.

216. *a.* The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the same with the ordinary object-pronouns: namely, *me* and *te* (or *toi*) in the singular, *nous* and *vous* in the plural. For the third person there is a special reflexive pronoun, *se*; it is the same in singular and plural.

b. The place of the reflexive pronoun is the same with that of any other object-pronoun (136 and 137): namely, in general before the verb, but after it in the imperative affirmative (when *te* becomes *toi*: 135*b*).

217. The auxiliary of a verb used reflexively is always and only être.

a. In accordance with the general rule (191*a*), if the reflexive object is a direct one, the participle in the compound tenses agrees with it in gender and number ; if it is indirect, the participle is invariable. Thus, from *se blesser wound one's self*, *il s'est blessé, elle s'est blessée, nous nous sommes blessés*; but from *s'imaginer imagine to one's self*, *il s'est imaginé, elle s'est imaginé, nous nous sommes imaginé*.

218. As a model of reflexive conjugation may be taken the verb *se réjouir delight one's self, rejoice*.

It is a regular verb of the second conjugation, inflected like *finir* (207).

a. The full inflection of the present indicative and imperative, with the synopsis of the other simple tenses, is :

INFINITIVE.

se (or *te, me* etc.) *réjouir, rejoice*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

se (etc.) *réjouissant, rejoicing*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>je me réjouis, I rejoice</i>	<i>nous nous réjouissons, we rejoice</i>
<i>tu te réjouis, thou rejoicest</i>	<i>vous vous réjouissez, you rejoice</i>
<i>il se réjouit, he rejoices</i>	<i>ils se réjouissent, they rejoice</i>

IMPERFECT, *je me réjouissais, I was rejoicing*

PRETERIT, *je me réjouis, I rejoiced*

FUTURE, *je me réjouirai, I shall rejoice*

CONDITIONAL, *je me réjouirais, I should rejoice*

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>réjouissons-nous, let us rejoice</i>
<i>réjouis-toi, rejoice (thou)</i>	<i>réjouissez-vous, rejoice (ye)</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *que je me réjouisse, that I may rejoice*

IMPERFECT, *que je me réjouisse, that I might rejoice*

b. The full inflection of the perfect indicative, with the synopsis of the other compound forms, next follows.

To save burdensome repetition, the various forms of the reflexive pronoun (in infin. and pple) and of the past participle (which in this verb must agree in gender and number with the object) are not given.

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

s'être réjoui, (to) have rejoiced

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

s'étant réjoui, having rejoiced

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

<i>je me suis réjoui, I have rejoiced</i>	<i>nous nous sommes réjouis, we have rejoiced</i>
<i>tu t'es réjoui, thou hast rejoiced</i>	<i>vous vous êtes réjouis, you have rejoiced</i>
<i>il s'est réjoui, he has rejoiced</i>	<i>ils se sont réjouis, they have rejoiced</i>

PLUPERFECT,

je m'étais réjoui, I had rejoiced

PAST ANTERIOR,

je me fus réjoui, I had rejoiced

FUTURE PERFECT,

je me serai réjoui, I shall have rejoiced

CONDITIONAL PERFECT,

je me serais réjoui, I should have rejoiced

SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT,

que je me sois réjoui, that I may have rejoiced

PLUPERFECT,

que je me fusse réjoui, that I might have rejoiced

219. The negative and interrogative forms are made in the same manner as those of any other

verb taking object-pronouns. Examples are : *je ne me réjouis pas I do not rejoice, ne se réjouit-il pas did he not rejoice? vous réjouissez-vous do you rejoice? ne nous réjouissons pas let us not rejoice, vous ne vous serez pas réjouis you (pl.) will not have rejoiced, qu'elle ne se fût pas réjouie that she might not have rejoiced, ne se sont-elles pas réjouies have they (f.) not rejoiced?*

220. *a.* Many reflexive verbs (like **se réjouir** itself) have to be rendered with simple verbs in English.

b. A number of reflexive verbs followed by certain prepositions form transitive expressions of special meaning.

Thus, **il s'approcha du feu** *he approached the fire*, **ils se mirent à écrire** *they began to write*, **elle ne peut se servir de ses mains** *she cannot use her hands*.

221. Plural reflexive forms are often used in a reciprocal sense : thus, **aimons-nous** *let us love one another*, **ils s'aiment** *they love each other*, and so on.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

222. A few verbs in French, as in other languages, are used only in the 3d singular, with the indefinite or impersonal subject *il it*, and are therefore called IMPERSONAL verbs. Those oftenest so used are : **geler** *freeze* (**il gèle** *it freezes*, **il a gelé**, etc.), **dégeler** *thaw*, **grêler** *hail*, **neiger** *snow*, **pleuvoir** *rain*, **tonner** *thunder*.

a. These verbs are conjugated like any others (always with the auxiliary **avoir**), except that only the 3d sing. is in use. **Pleuvoir** is irregular : see 227, 47.

223. Many other verbs are used in great part impersonally, with *il* as subject, and often in a

somewhat special meaning. Thus, *il importe* (etc.) *it is of consequence*, *il convient* *it is suitable or proper*, *il arrive* *it happens*, *il vaut mieux* *it is better*, *il s'agit* *the question is*.

224. Almost any verb may take the impersonal subject *il* representing by anticipation its real subject, stated later: thus: *il vient un autre* *there comes another*, *il paraît qu'elle n'y était pas* *it appears that she was not there*.

225. The English expression *there is, there are*, etc., is represented in French by the verb *avoir*, used impersonally with the adverb *y* *there* before it: thus, *il y a* *there is or are* (literally, *it has there*), *il n'y a pas* *there is not*, *y a-t-il eu* *has there been?* *il n'y aura pas* *there will not be*, *n'y aurait-il pas eu* *would there not have been?* *qu'il y eût eu* *that there might have been*.

a. Since the following noun is in French grammatically the object of the verb, and not its subject as in English, there is of course no change of number in the verb when the noun becomes plural: thus, *il y avait un oiseau* *there was a bird*, and *il y avait quatre oiseaux* *there were four birds* (literally, *it had there one bird, four birds*).

b. Even the infinitive, *y avoir*, is used, along with certain verbs having the value of auxiliaries: thus, *il peut y avoir* *there may be*, *il ne doit pas y avoir eu* *there ought not to have been*.

c. *Il y a* etc. is often used, elliptically, in expressing extent or distance of time reckoned backward from the present: thus, *il y a huit jours qu'il est malade* *he has been ill (these) eight days* (literally, *there are eight days that he [has been and] is ill*), *je le vis il y a deux mois* *I saw him two months ago* (literally, *I saw him, there are two months [since]*).

d. *Il est* etc. is also used impersonally, especially in poetry, instead of *il y a* etc.

226. a. In speaking of the conditions of the weather, the French uses *il fait* etc., *it makes* etc., with a noun or adjective, where the English uses *it is* : see **227**, 28.

b. For the impersonal verb *falloir* *be necessary* and its use see **227**, 29.

EXERCISE 12.

PASSIVE, IMPERSONAL, AND REFLEXIVE VERBS.

VOCABULARY.

inviter, *invite*

se lever, *rise, get up*

se moquer de, *ridicule, mock*

neiger, *snow*

le bal, *the ball*

le roi, *the king*

le peuple, *the people, nation*

chasser, *hunt, drive out*

se coucher, *go to bed*

sembler, *seem*

geler, *freeze*

le royaume, *the kingdom*

la reine, *the queen*

I.

1. Le roi est-il aimé du peuple ? 2. Non, le roi n'est aimé de personne, mais la reine est aimée de tout le monde. 3. Les rois de France ont été chassés de leur royaume. 4. Le peuple s'est réjoui, parcequ'on a chassé ses rois. 5. Ma sœur s'est couchée il y a deux heures. 6. Nous nous couchons à neuf heures et nous nous levons à sept heures. 7. Est-ce que ces dames sont invitées au bal ? 8. Elles se sont couchées parcequ'elles n'y ont pas été invitées. 9. Les enfants se réjouissaient parcequ'il avait neigé toute la journée. 10. Il n'a pas gelé hier, mais il gèlera ce soir. 11. Il me semble que ces enfants se moquent de moi. 12. Ils ne se sont pas moqués de vous, ils se moquent de leur maître. 13. Y a-t-il eu un bal hier ? 14. Oui,

madame et il y avait beaucoup de dames et de messieurs, parce que le roi y était aussi.

II.

1. There were kings in France, but they were driven from the kingdom. 2. The people rejoiced because there was no king in France. 3. Why did you rejoice? 4. I rejoice because it is snowing. 5. Are you invited to the ball? 6. Although we are invited to it, we shall go to bed at nine o'clock. 7. It seems to me that you are unhappy. 8. I am unhappy because the other children mock me. 9. There was no church in this town, but there is one now. 10. There will be no ball to-morrow because the queen is ill. 11. The queen is much loved by her people. 12. This lady rejoiced (*perfect*) because the gloves which she had lost were found by the boy. 13. When I got up it was still freezing. 14. It seems that it snowed yesterday.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

227. Those verbs in French which are inflected throughout like one or other of the three—*donner, finir, vendre*—already given, are called **REGULAR VERBS**. But there are also many others in the language deviating more or less from these models, and they are called **IRREGULAR VERBS**.

a. The irregular verbs are one of the principal difficulties of French Grammar. They are of various degrees of irregularity : some are irregular only in their principal parts, all the derived parts coming from them precisely as in the verbs of the three regular conjugations; others are irregular

also in the formation of the derived parts (only the impf. subj. coming without any exception regularly from the pret. indic.). But, in all of them, irregularities of tense-inflection are confined to the three present tenses—the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive. Of the other tenses, when the first person is known, the rest follow from it with certainty.

b. The only rules for the formation of the derived parts are those already given for regular verbs (199). Of more special importance among the irregular verbs is the rule for finding the plural persons of the present from the present participle.

c. In learning an irregular verb, the principal parts should first be mastered and made familiar, then the synopsis, then the inflection of the present tenses when this is in any way irregular. The synopsis of principal and derived parts will be given in the following table for every irregular verb or for one of every group of like verbs, as well as the inflection of the present tenses when called for. The plural persons of the imperative are always the same as the first and second persons plural of the pres. indic. (except in **avoir**, **être**, and **savoir**). In the synopsis, those derived parts which do not come regularly from the principal parts will have attention called to them by being printed with **s p a c e d** or **o p e n** letters.

d. Reference figures in the table refer to the explanation of special idiomatic uses of certain verbs, which follows the table.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. *absoudre absolve.*

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
absoudre	absolvant	absous	absouds	absolus
like résoudre except in past pple.				

2. acquérir *acquière*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
acquérir	acquérant	acquis	acquièrs	acquis
acquerrai	acquérerais	avoir acquis	acquièrs	
acquerrais	acquière	etc., etc.		acquisse
<i>pres. indic.</i> acquiers, -quiers, -quiert, -quérons, -quérez, -quière				
<i>pres. subj.</i> acquière, -quières, -quière, -quérions, -quériez, -quière				

3. aller¹ *go*.

aller	allant	allé	vais	allai
irai	allais	être allé	va	allasse
irais	aille	etc., etc.		
<i>pres. indic.</i> vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont				
<i>pres. subj.</i> aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent				

4. assaillir *assail*.

assaillir	assaillant	assailli	assaille	assaillis
assaillirai	assaillais	avoir assailli	assailles	assaillisse
assaillirais	assaille	etc.		
<i>pres. indic.</i> assaille, -sailles, -saille, -saillons, -saillez, -saillent.				

5. asseoir *sit*.

asseoir	asseyant	assis	assieds	assis
assièrai	asseyais	être assis	assieds	assisse
assièrais	asseye	etc.		
<i>pres. indic.</i> assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent				

6. boire *drink*.

boire	buvant	bu	bois	bus
boirai	buvais	avoir bu	bois	busse
boirais	boive	etc.		
<i>pres. indic.</i> bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent				
<i>pres. subj.</i> boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent				

7. bouillir *boil*.

bouillir	bouillant	bouilli	bous	bouillis
bouillirai	bouillais	avoir bouilli	bous	bouillisse
bouillirais	bouille	etc.		
<i>pres. indic.</i> bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent				

8. bruire *roar*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
bruire	bruyant		il bruit	

9. circoncire *circumcise*.

circoncire	circoncisant	circoncis	circoncis	circoncis
	like suffire	except in past pple.		

10. clore *close*.

clore	[closant]	clos	clos	
clorai		avoir clos		
clorais	close	etc.		
	<i>pres. indic.</i> clos, clos, clôt, —, —, closent			

11. conclure *conclude*.

conclure	concluant	conclu	conclus	conclus
conclurai	concluais	avoir conclu	conclus	conclusse
conclurais	conclue	etc.		
	<i>pres. indic.</i> conclus, -clus, -clut, -cluons, -cluez, -cluent			

12. conduire *conduct*.

conduire	conduisant	conduit	conduis	conduisis
conduirai	conduisais	avoir conduit	conduis	conduisisse
conduirais	conduise	etc.		
	<i>pres. indic.</i> conduis, -duis, -duit, -duisons, -duisez, -duisent			

13. confire *preserve*.

confire	confisant	confit	confis	confis
	like suffire	except in past pple.		

14. coudre *sew*.

coudre	cousant	cousu	couds	cousis
coudrai	cousais	avoir cousu	couds	cousisse
coudrais	couse	etc.		
	<i>pres. indic.</i> couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent			

15. courir *run*.

courir	courant	couru	cours	courus
courrai	courais	avoir couru	cours	courusse
courrais	coure	etc.		
	<i>pres. indic.</i> cours, cours, court, courons, courez, courent			

16. couvrir *cover*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
couvrir	couvrant	couvert	couvre	couvris
couvrirai	couvrais	avoir couvert	couvre	couvrisse
couvrirais	couvre	etc.		

pres. indic. couvre, couvres, couvre, couvrons, couvrez, couvrent

17. craindre *fear*.

craindre	craignant	craint	crains	craignis
craindrai	craignais	avoir craint	crains	craignisse
craindrais	craigne	etc.		

pres. indic. crains, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent

18. croire² *believe*.

croire	croyant	crû	crois	crus
croirai	croyais	avoir crû	crois	crusse
croirais	croie	etc.		

pres. indic. crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient

19. croître *grow*.

croître	croissant	crû	crois	crûs
croîtrai	croissais	avoir crû	crois	crûsse
croitrais	croisse	etc.		

pres. indic. crois, crois, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent

Compounds of croître have no circumflex in past ppl.

20. cueillir *gather*.

cueillir	cueillant	cueilli	cueille	cueillis
cueil-				
lerai	cueillais	avoir cueilli	cueille	cueillisse
cueil-				
lerais	cueille	etc.		

pres. indic. cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent

21. déchoir *fall*.

déchoir	[déchoyant]	déchu	déchois	déchus
décher-				
rai	déchoyais	avoir déchu	déchois	déchusse
décher-				
rais	déchoie	etc.		

pres. indic. déchois, -chois, -choit, -choyons, -choyez, -choient

22. *devoir*³ *owe*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
devoir	devant	dû	dois	dus
devrai	devais	avoir dû	dois	dusse
devrais	doive	etc.		

pres. indic. dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent

pres. subj. doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent

23. *dire*⁴ *say, tell*.

dire	disant	dit	dis	dis
dirai	disais	avoir dit	dis	disse
dirais	dise	etc.		

pres. indic. dis, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent

24. *dormir* *sleep*.

dormir	dormant	dormi	dors	dormis
dormirai	dormais	avoir dormi	dors	dormisse
dormirais	dorme	etc.		

pres. indic. dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment

25. *écrire* *write*.

écrire	écrivait	écrit	écris	écrivis
écrirai	écrivais	avoir écrit	écris	écrivisse
écrirais	écrive	etc.		

pres. indic. écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent

26. *envoyer* *send*.

envoyer	envoyant	envoyé	envoie	envoyai
enverrai	envoyais	avoir envoyé	envoie	envoyasse
enverrais	envoie	etc.		

pres. indic. envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient

27. *faillir*⁵ *miss*.

faillir	[faillant]	failli	[faux]	[faillis]
faillirai	[faillais]	avoir failli		
faillirais	[faillie]			

28. faire⁶ *make, do.*

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
faire	faisant	fait	fais	fis
ferai	faisais	avoir fait	fais	fisse
ferais	fasse	etc.		

pres. indic. fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font

29. falloir⁷ *be necessary.*

falloir	[fallant]	fallu	faut	fallut
faudra	fallait	a fallu		fallût
faudrait	faillie	etc.		

Used only impersonally.

30. frire *fry.*

frire	—	frit	fris	fris
frirai		avoir frit	fris	frisse
frirais				

pres. indic. fris, fris, frit, frions, friez, frient

31. fuir *flee.*

fuir	fuyant	fui	fuis	fuis
fuirai	fuyais	avoir fui	fuis	fuisse
fuirais	fuie	etc.		

pres. indic. fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient

32. gésir *lie.*

gésir	gisant	—	gis	—
	gisais			

pres. indic. —, —, gît, gîsons, gîsez, gisent

33. joindre *join.*

joindre	joignant	joint	joins	joignis
joindrai	joignais	avoir joint	joins	joignisse
joindrais	joigne	etc.		

pres. indic. joins, joins, joint, joignons, joignez, joignent

34. lire *read.*

lire	lisant	lu	lis	lis
lirai	lisais	avoir lu	lis	lisse
lirais	lise	etc.		

pres. indic. lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent

35. *maudire curse.*

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
maudire	maudissant	maudit	maudis	maudis
maudirai	maudissais	avoir maudit	maudis	maudisse
maudirais	maudisse	etc.		

pres. indic. maudis, -dis, -dit, -dissons, -dissez, -dissent

36. *mettre put.*

mettre	mettant	mis	mets	mis
mettrai	mettais	avoir mis	mets	misse
mettrais	mette	etc.		

pres. indic. mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent

37. *moudre grind.*

moudre	moulant	moulu	mouds	moulus
moudrai	moulais	avoir moulu	mouds	moulusse
moudrais	moule	etc.		

pres. indic. mouds, mouds, moulu, moulons, moulez, moulent

38. *mourir die.*

mourir	mourant	mort	meurs	mourus
mourrai	mourais	être mort	meurs	mourusse
mourrais	meure	etc.		

pres. indic. meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent

pres. subj. meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent

39. *mouvoir move.*

mouvoir	mouvant	mû	meus	mus
mouvrai	mouvais	avoir mû	meus	musse
mouvrais	meuve	etc.		

pres. indic. meus, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent

pres. subj. meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, moviez, meuvent

40. *naître^s be born.*

naître	naissant	né	nais	naquis
naîtrai	naissais	être né	nais	naquisse
naîtrais	naisse	etc.		

pres. indic. nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent

41. nuire *injure*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
nuire	nuisant	nui	nuis	nuisis
nuirai	nuisais	avoir nuï	nuis	—
nuirais	nuise	etc.		

pres. indic. nuis, nuis, nuit, nuisons, nuisez, nuisent

42. ouïr *hear*.

ouïr	[oyant]	ouï	[ois]	[ouïs]
[oirai]	[oyais]	avoir ouï	[ois]	[ouïsse]
[oirais]	[oie]	etc.		

43. paraître *appear*.

paraître	paraissant	paru	paraïs	parus
paraîtrai	paraissais	avoir paru	paraïs	parusse
paraîtrais	paraïsse	etc.		

pres. indic. paraïs, -rais, -raît, -raisons, -raissez, -raissent

44. partir *depart*.

partir	partant	parti	pars	partis
partirai	partais	être or	pars	partisso
partirais	parte	avoir parti		

pres. indic. pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent

45. peindre *paint*.

peindre	peignant	peint	peins	peignis
peindrai	peignais	avoir peint	peins	peignisse
peindrais	peigne	etc.		

pres. indic. peins, peins, peint, peignons, peignez, peignent

46. plaie^r *please*.

plaie	plaisant	plu	plais	plus
like taire, except 3d pers. sing. of <i>pres. indic.</i> il plaît.				

47. pleuvoir *rain*.

pleuvoir	pleuvant	plu	plent	plut
pleuvra	pleuvait	avoir plu	—	plût
pleu-	pleuve	etc.		
vrait				

Impersonal only.

48. *pourvoir provide.*

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
pourvoir	pourvoyant	pourvu	pourvois	pourvus
pourvoirai	pourvoyais	avoir pourvu	pourvois	pourvusse
pourvoirais	pourvoie	etc.		

pres. indic. and *subj.* like *voir*.

49. *pouvoir¹⁰ be able.*

pouvoir	pouvant	pu	peux or puis	pus
pourrai	pouvais	avoir pu	—	pusse
pourrais	puisse	etc.		

pres. indic. *peux or puis, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent*

50. *prendre take.*

prendre	prenant	pris	prends	pris
prendrai	prenais	avoir pris	prends	pris
prendrais	prene	etc.		

pres. indic. *prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent*

pres. subj. *prenne, prennent, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent*

51. *prévoir foresee.*

prévoir	prévoyant	prévu	prévois	prévis
---------	-----------	-------	---------	--------

like *pourvoir* except in *preterit*.

52. *recevoir receive.*

recevoir	recevant	reçu	reçois	reçus
recevrai	recevais	avoir reçu	reçois	reçusse
recevrais	reçoive	etc.		

pres. indic. *reçois, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent*

pres. subj. *reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent*

53. *résoudre resolve.*

résoudre	résolvant	résolu	résouds	résolus
résoudrai	résolvais	avoir résolu	résouds	résolusse
résoudrais	résolve	etc.		

pres. indic. *résouds, -souds, -soud, -solvons, -solvez, -solvent*

54. *rire laugh.*

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
rire	riant	ri	ris	ris
rirai	riaïs	avoir ri	ris	risse
rirais	rie	etc.		

pres. indic. ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient

55. *savoir¹¹ know.*

savoir	sachant	su	sais	sus
saurai	savaïs	avoir su	sache	susse
saurais	sache	etc.		

pres. indic. sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent

imperative sache, sachons, sachez

56. *servir serve.*

servir	servant	servi	sers	servis
servirai	servais	avoir servi	sers	servisse
servirais	serve	etc.		

pres. indic. sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent

57. *suffire suffice.*

suffire	suffisant	suffi	suffis	suffis
suffirai	suffisais	avoir suffi	suffis	suffisse
suffirais	suffise	etc.		

pres. indic. suffis, suffis, suffit, suffisons, suffisez, suffisent

58. *suivre follow.*

suivre	suisvant	suiwi	suis	suiwis
suirai	suivais	avoir suiwi	suis	suivisse
suirais	suiwe	etc.		

pres. indic. suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent

59. *taire be silent.*

taire	taisant	tu	tais	tus
tairai	taïsaïs	avoir tu	tais	tusse
tairais	taise	etc.		

pres. indic. tais, tais, tait, taisons, taisez, taisent

60. traire *draw*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
traire	trayant	trait	trais	
trairai	trayais	avoir trait	trais	—
trairais	traie	etc.		

pres. indic. traie, traie, traie, trayons, trayez, traient

61. valoir¹² *be worth*.

valoir	valant	valu	vaux	valus
vaudrai	valais	avoir valu	vaux	valusse
vaudrais	vaille	etc.		

pres. indic. vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent

pres. subj. vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, valient

62. venir¹³ *come*.

venir	venant	venu	viens	vins
viendrai	venais	être venu	viens	vinsses
viendrais	viens	etc.		

pres. indic. viens, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent

pres. subj. vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent

63. vêtir *clothe*.

vêtir	vêtant	vêtu	vêts	vêtis
vêtirai	vêtais	avoir vêtu	vêts	vêtisses
vêtirais	vête	etc.		

pres. indic. vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtions, vêtez, vêtent

64. vivre¹⁴ *live*.

vivre	vivant	vécu	vis	vécus
vivrai	vivais	avoir vécu	vis	vécusses
vivrais	vive	etc.		

pres. indic. vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent

65. voir *see*.

voir	voyant	vu	vois	vis
verrai	voyais	avoir vu	vois	visse
verrais	voie	etc.		

pres. indic. vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient

pres. subj. voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient

66. vouloir¹⁵ *will*.

INFINITIVE, ETC.	PRES. PPL., ETC.	PAST PPL., ETC.	PRES. INDIC., ETC.	PRET. INDIC., ETC.
vouloir	voulant	voulu	veux	voulus
voudrai	voulais	avoir voulu	—	voulusse
voudrais	veuille	etc.		

pres. indic. veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent

pres. subj. veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent

SPECIAL IDIOMATIC USES OF SOME OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

228. 1. **Aller.** *a.* **Va** 2d sing. impv. becomes **vas** before **en** and **y** (compare 200, *d*).

b. The present and imperfect indic. of **aller** are used before an infinitive (without infinitive-sign), precisely like *I am going, I was going* in English, as a sort of immediate future tense, or to denote something just about to take place: thus, **il va partir** *he is going to leave*, **j'allais lui répondre** *I was going to answer him*.

c. **Allons** *let us go* is used in the sense of *come, come on*. **Aller voir, aller chercher** correspond to our *visit*, and *look for* or *fetch*. With the reflexive **s'en aller** *go off*, the indirect pronoun-object **en** always follows the other pronoun: thus, **je m'en vais** *I am going off*, **il s'en est allé** *he has gone away*, **va-t'en** *be off*.

2. **Croire** in French is followed by an infinitive without infinitive-sign, where in English we use instead a dependent clause, or insert a reflexive pronoun: thus, **je crois l'avoir dit** *I think (myself) to have said it*, or *I think that I have said it*.

3. **Devoir.** *a.* The past participle has the circumflex only in the masc. sing. (to distinguish it from **du = de le**); the other forms are **due, dus, dues**.

b. **Doit** etc. very often signifies *is to, is planned* or *destined to*: thus, **il doit venir chez nous demain** *he is to come to us to-morrow*, **je savais ce que je devais faire** *I knew what I was to do*. In many cases it has the sense of *must, have to, etc.*: thus, **elle a dû être belle dans sa jeunesse** *she must have been beautiful in her youth*. The

meaning *ought* belongs especially to the conditional: thus, *quand devrais-je revenir when ought I to come back? il aurait dû le faire he ought to have done it.*

4. **Dire.** Common phrases containing **dire** are: *on dit or il se dit it is said; c'est à dire that is to say, that is; à dire vrai to tell the truth; pour ainsi dire so to speak; cela va sans dire that does not need to be stated or is a matter of course (literally, goes without saying).* **Vouloir dire** (literally, *wish to say*) means *signify, mean.*

5. **Faillir.** The perfect *j'ai failli* etc. is used with a following infinitive in the sense *come near, just escape:* thus, *j'ai failli tomber I came within an ace of falling.*

6. **Faire** has many special uses and idioms; among them may be noticed here:

a. It is used impersonally in describing the conditions of the weather.

Thus, *il fait froid it is cold, il faisait chaud it was warm, il fera beau temps it will be fine weather; even il fait du vent it is windy, il a fait des éclairs it has lightened; and so on.*

b. It is much used in the sense of *cause to*, etc., with a following infinitive, or as an auxiliary forming a kind of causative verb-phrase.

Thus, *je le fais savoir I cause to know it (i.e. make it known), il les a fait venir he has made them come, vous ferez faire un habit you will have a coat made (literally, will cause to make a coat).*

If the following infinitive has a direct object, the object of **faire** itself must be made indirect: thus, *je le fais écrire I make him write*, but *je lui fais écrire une lettre I make him write a letter.*

c. **Faire** is sometimes (but much less often than *do* in English) used to avoid the repetition of a preceding verb: thus, *je lui ai écrit, comme je devais le faire I wrote him, as I ought to do.*

7. Since **falloir** is impersonal only, while the equivalent English expressions, *must, have to, be obliged to*, etc., admit subjects of all persons and numbers, the sentence has to be cast into a quite different form in French.

a. **Il faut** etc. is oftenest followed by **que** *that* before

the verb which in English takes *must* as its auxiliary. This verb must in French always be in the subjunctive : present if the tense of **falloir** is present or future, otherwise imperfect. Thus: *he must work* **il faut qu'il travaille** (literally, *it is necessary that he work*), *you must read* **il faut que vous lisiez**, *the boy had to go* **il fallait que le garçon allât**, *the army will be obliged to retreat* **il faudra que l'armée se retire**, *the books would have had to be sold* **il aurait fallu que les livres fussent vendus**.

b. But, if the subject be a pronoun, a briefer expression is more often used, the subject being made indirect object of the tense of **falloir**, which is then followed by the infinitive of the other verb : thus, *he must work* **il lui faut travailler** (literally, *it is necessary to him to work*), *you must read* **il vous faut lire**, *she had to go* **il lui fallait aller**, *they will be obliged to withdraw* **il leur faudra se retirer**.

c. **Il faut** etc. is also used with a following subject-noun to express that something is lacking or desired: thus, **il me faut un chapeau** *I want a hat* (literally, *there is wanting to me a hat*), **vous fallait-il des livres** *did you want some books?*

8. The perfect of the verb **naître**, **je suis né**, etc., is used in the sense of *was born*, if the person spoken of is still living.

9. **Plaire** is much used impersonally, especially in the phrase **s'il vous plaît** *if you please*.

10. **Pouvoir**. a. **Puis** and **peux** are equally common as 1st sing. In questions, however, only **puis-je** is used.

b. **Pouvoir** sometimes expresses general possibility, and is to be rendered by *may*, *might*, etc.: thus, **cela peut être** *that may be*, **il pouvait avoir vingt ans** *he might (perhaps) be 20 years old*. It is sometimes used reflexively, in the sense of *be possible*: thus, **cela se peut** *that is possible*.

c. **Pouvoir** often takes an object directly where in English we have to use another verb: thus, **peut-il attendre** *can he wait?* **il le peut** *he can (do) it*.

d. When this verb is made negative before an infinitive, the **pas** is often omitted: thus, **cela ne peut tarder** *that cannot delay*. The omission is more usual with **puis** than with **peux** in 1st sing. present.

11. **Savoir.** *a.* With an object and a predicate relating to it, **savoir** means *know to be*: thus, **je le sais modeste** *I know him to be modest*; with a following infinitive, it means *know how*: thus, **il sait se taire** *he knows how to hold his tongue*.

b. The pres. subj. **je sache**, etc. is in certain phrases used like an indicative: thus, **je ne sache personne qui** *I know no one who*, etc.; **que je sache** *so far as I know*. The conditional **saurais** is used (negatively) in the sense of *can*, *be able*: thus, **ils ne sauraient servir** *they are unable to be of use*.

c. The phrase **je ne sais quoi** (or **qui**, **quel**, etc.) is much used in the sense of *something*, *I can't tell what*, etc.

d. **Savoir** is very often conjugated negatively with **ne** alone (**pas** being omitted).

12. **Valoir.** *Be worth more* is **valoir mieux**; *be worth the trouble or be worth while* is **valoir la peine**.

13. *a.* **Venir** is followed by an infinitive directly (without **à** or **de**), when it means *come in order to do anything*: thus, **il est venu me voir** *he came to see me*, **venez dîner chez nous** *come and dine with us*.

b. The present and imperfect indicative of **venir** followed by **de** are used before an infinitive to signify time just past: thus, **je viens de le voir** *I have just seen him*, **il venait de dîner** *he had just dined*.

Such phrases mean literally *I am coming from*, *he was coming from*, etc., and are the exact opposite of *I am going to* (e.g. **je vais le voir** *I am going to see him*), *he was going to* (**il allait dîner** *he was going to dine*), etc.

14. **Vivre.** The pres. subj. is used in good wishes for English *long live*: thus, **vive le roi** *long live the king*.

15. **Vouloir.** The regular imperative **veux** **voulons** **voulez** is very rarely used; instead of it, the 2d pers. sing. and plur. **veuille** **veuillez** are used, but only with a following infinitive, and in the sense of *please to*, *be good enough to*: thus, **veuillez vous asseoir** *please sit down*.

b. **Vouloir** is used with the infinitive of another verb almost as an auxiliary, and must stand for our *will* whenever a wish or request is implied: thus, **voulez-vous dîner chez nous** *will you dine with us?* It also signifies *wish to have*, *want*: as **voulez vous du lait** *will you have some milk?*

c. **En vouloir**, followed by **à**, means *have a grudge against*, *be vexed or angry at*, *be hostile to*, etc. : thus, **il en voulait à ce pauvre homme** *he bore a grudge against this poor man*.

EXERCISES ON THE MOST USED IRREGULAR VERBS.

EXERCISE 13.

VOCABULARY.

dire (23), *say, tell*

écrire (25), *write*

aller (3), *go*

revenir (62), *return*

le roman, *the novel*

lire (34), *read*

envoyer (26), *send*

venir (62), *come*

renvoyer (26), *send back*

le journal, *the newspaper*

I.

1. Pourquoi allez-vous à Paris ? 2. J'y vais trouver mon fils, qui vient d'y aller. 3. N'allez pas le chercher; il va revenir. 4. Lisez les lettres qu'il nous a écrites. 5. Je les ai lues hier, et je viens de lui écrire aussi. 6. Nous lui écrirons demain, et nous lui enverrons le roman que nous venons de lire. 7. Avez-vous lu le journal? on dit que le roi va venir en Angleterre. 8. Il vient d'être chassé de France, mais il ne viendra pas ici. 9. Ces messieurs me disaient qu'ils allaient venir hier, mais ils ne sont pas venus. 10. Allez les chercher, et quand vous les aurez trouvés, venez me le dire. 11. Il s'en est allé ce matin, mais il reviendra demain. 12. Donnez-moi le roman que vous lisiez aujourd'hui, et je le lirai demain. 13. Quoiqu'il vienne chercher le journal, on ne le lui donnera pas. 14. Il est venu nous dire qu'il n'a rien envoyé à votre fils. 15. Quoiqu'ils n'y aillent pas aujourd'hui, ils iront

demain. 16. Que dites-vous, monsieur ? Je ne vous dirai pas ce que j'allais lui dire.

II.

1. Why do you write to him ? 2. I was writing to him because he had written to me. 3. We will write you a letter when we go to Paris. 4. She will send you the newspapers which they have just sent her. 5. We have read the newspapers that you sent us, and we are going to send them back to you. 6. Come and tell me what you were reading. 7. We are reading the novel you wrote. 8. When you have read it I will come and fetch it. 9. Although he come here, we will tell him nothing. 10. He is going to come, because he has been told that you are here. 11. I went away because he was coming. 12. We will read you what he wrote to us. 13. They will not read what he has said, but they will send it back to him to-morrow. 14. They went to Paris when their friends came here. 15. They have returned, and they will not go away again.

EXERCISE 14.

VOCABULARY.

devoir (22), *owe, ought*
vouloir (66), *wish, will*
faire (28), *do, make*
le papier, *paper*

pouvoir (49), *be able, can*
falloir (29), *be necessary, must*
déjà, *adv. already*
le crayon, *the pencil*

I.

1. Que faites-vous là, mes enfants. 2. Nous ne faisons rien. 3. Vous ne devriez pas être ici, vous

auriez dû être déjà à l'école. 4. Je ne veux pas aller à l'école. 5. Il faut y aller, mon enfant; va-t-en. 6. Avez-vous les livres qu'il vous faut? 7. Il me faut aussi des crayons et du papier. 8. Si vous voulez des crayons, il faut que vous en achetiez. 9. Nous en voulons, mais nous ne pouvons en acheter, parce que nous n'avons pas d'argent. 10. Veuillez bien me donner l'argent que vous me devez. 11. J'ai voulu vous le donner hier, mais je ne l'ai pas pu. 12. Il doit venir demain, mais nous ne pourrons pas être ici. 13. Il faut que vous fassiez ce que je vous ai dit. 14. Il nous a fallu des robes, et nous en avons fait venir de Paris. 15. Il fallait que les robes fussent faites, parce que nous voulions aller au bal. 16. Ils ne font pas ce que ils doivent faire. 17. Ils ne l'ont pas fait, parce qu'il faisait très chaud hier. 18. Quand ils l'auront fait, je vous le ferai savoir à vous et à vos amis.

II.

1. Will you come with us? 2. I cannot come, because it is very cold. 3. You ought to come, and you can come if you will (it le). 4. They could not go to school, because they had not the paper that they needed. 5. They must buy paper and pencils. 6. They would like to buy them, and they ought to buy them. 7. I will have pencils and books bought. 8. You ought not to have given them the books; they could have worked, if they needed money. 9. They will not be able to work, because they are ill. 10. Although she wanted to come, she could not. 11. Do what you wish; but I will not do it. 12. The ladies needed new dresses, but they could not find

any. 13. My new dress is to come from Paris tomorrow; I have had it made there. 14. Although she wants to go to the ball, she cannot. 15. She was to have gone there, but she had to go away. 16. If the teacher cannot come, I will have it told to the children.

EXERCISE 15.

VOCABULARY.

savoir (55), *know*

recevoir (52), *receive*

connaître (43), *be acquainted with*

mettre (36), *put, put on*

sur, *on*

voir (65), *see*

croire (18), *believe*

paraître (43), *appear*

combien, *how much or many*

quelque chose, *something*

I.

1. Connaissez-vous cet homme? 2. Je le vois, mais je ne le connais pas. 3. Je croyais le connaître, mais il me dit qu'il ne me connaît pas. 4. Vous le verrez demain, parce qu'il va venir nous voir. 5. Avez-vous reçu des lettres ce matin? 6. J'en ai reçu, mais je ne savais pas que vous les aviez écrites. 7. Quand vous les aurez lues, mettez-les sur la table. 8. Je les y ai mises, mais je ne les y vois plus. 9. Quand je reçois des lettres, je les mets toujours sur cette table. 10. Je ne saurais vous dire combien je vous aime. 11. Elles croient parler très bien, quoiqu'elles ne sachent rien. 12. Nous n'avons jamais su ce qu'il y avait dans ce journal. 13. Quand je recevais sa lettre, je ne savais pas qu'elle était ici. 14. Je la voyais, mais elle ne m'a pas vu. 15. Vous paraissez malade, madame; est-ce qu'il vous faut quelque chose? 16. Quoiqu'elle mette sa plus belle robe, elle ne paraît pas jolie.

II.

1. Do you see the gentleman? 2. I have not seen him, but I believe he is here. 3. We shall see him to-morrow. 4. Have you received the novel which has just appeared? 5. I have received it and read it; it appears to be very good. 6. Did you not see the books in the chair where I had put them? 7. If you put the books on the chair, I shall not see them. 8. They put the letters they had received on the table. 9. I did not know that you were to receive any letters. 10. We cannot tell you how many letters we have received; but we know that we shall receive more (*encore*) of them. 11. Do not believe all that is said. 12. They believed they told you all, but they do not know all that we know. 13. They know something that you will never know. 14. Why did she put on her prettiest dress? 15. She put on her prettiest dress because she saw us.

ADVERBS.

229. 1. Of adverbs and adverb-phrases there are in French, of course, a great many which it belongs to the dictionary to give.

a. The conjunctive adverbs **y** and **en** were explained at 143-44; the relative adverbs **dont** and **où**, at 172-73. For the use of adverbs of quantity with nouns, see 92.

230. Many adverbs make phrases with prepositions: thus, **d'ici** *hence* (literally, *from here*), **par où** *by what road?* **jusqu'où** *how far?* etc.

231. *a.* The interrogative adverbs—**où** *where*, **quand** *when*, **combien** *how much*, **comment** *how*—are, like the interrogative pronouns, also used as relative, in which case their value is rather that of conjunctions.

232. The responsive adverbs are **oui** *yes* and **non** *no*.

a. Instead of **oui**, **si** is sometimes used (especially colloquially), in reply to a negative question: thus, **vous n'y avez pas été ? si** *you have not been there ? yes, I have*.

233. **Voici** and **voilà** are also abbreviated sentences (from **vois ici** and **vois là**), and they retain some of the constructions belonging to the verb which really forms a part of them.

a. Thus, they often take a pronoun-object, which (contrary to the rule for an imperative affirmative: **136.**) is placed before them: thus, **les voilà** *there they are*, **m'y voici** *here I am*, **vous voulez de l'argent ? en voilà** *you want money ? there is some*; more rarely, they are preceded by the relative object **que**: thus, **ce monsieur que voici** *this gentleman here* (literally, *whom behold here*).

234. Adverbs have considerable freedom of position in the sentence. General rules are:

a. An adverb is almost never allowed before the verb in French: thus, *she always cries* **elle pleure toujours**, *I often take a walk* **je me promène souvent**.

b. With a verb in a compound tense, the adverbs of most frequent use ordinarily come between the auxiliary and the participle: thus, *she has always cried*, **elle a toujours pleuré**, *I had often taken a walk*, **je m'étais souvent promené**. But such may for special reasons come after the participle, as do adverbial phrases; and the words for *to-day*, *yesterday*, *to-morrow*, etc., always follow the participle.

ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

235. Most adjectives, in French as in English, have adverbs made from them by adding an adverbial suffix.

The adverb-making suffix in French is **ment**, and it is in general added to the feminine form of the adjective—yet with not a few exceptions.

236. Most adjectives ending in a consonant in

the masculine add *ment* to their feminine form : thus, 'haut *high*, 'haument *highly*; grand *great*, grandement *greatly*.

Exceptions to this rule are the following :

a. Adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent* for the most part change their *nt* into *m*, and add *ment* directly to it : thus, constant *constant*, constamment *constantly*; prudent *prudent*, prudemment *prudently*.

But *lentement* *slowly*, *présentement* *presently*, *véhémentement* *vehemently*, by the general rule.

b. A few adjectives change *e* of the feminine to *é* before *ment* : thus, communément, confusément, diffusément, expressément, importunément, obscurément, profondément, précisément.

c. Gentil forms *gentiment* *nicely*.

237. Most adjectives ending in a vowel add *ment* to their masculine form : thus, facile *easy*, facilement *easily*; joli *pretty*, joliment *prettily*; absolu *absolute*, absolument *absolutely*.

Exceptions to this rule are as follows :

a. Beau, nouveau, fou, and mou add *ment* to their feminine form (107): thus, nouvellement, follement, etc.

b. A few adjectives change their final *e* to *é* before *ment* : thus, aveuglément, commodément, conformément, énormément, immensément (and one or two others, little used).

c. A few adjectives change final *u* to *û* before *ment* : thus, assidûment, continuûment, crûment, nûment; and gai *gay* makes either *gaiement* or *gaîment*.

d. Impuni forms *impunément* *with impunity*.

238. Adverbs derived from adjectives (and a few others, as *souvent* *often*) have a comparative and superlative, made by prefixing *plus* and *le plus*

respectively (as in the comparison of adjectives : 115) : thus,

facilement, plus **facilement**, le plus **facilement**, *easily, more easily, most easily*

souvent, plus **souvent**, le plus **souvent**, *often, oftener, oftenest*

239. Four original adverbs have special comparative forms, which are made superlative by prefixing **le** : thus,

beaucoup, plus, le plus, *much, more, most*

bien, mieux, le mieux, *well, better, best*

mal, pis, le pis, *badly or ill, worse, worst*

peu, moins, le moins, *little, less, least*

240. Many adjectives are, either commonly or in certain phrases, used directly as adverbs, without any change of form. Some of the commonest of them are : **bas** *in a low tone*, **'haut** *loud, aloud*, **clair** *clearly*, **droit** *straight*, **exprès** *expressly*, **fort** *very*, **juste** *correctly*, **tout** *quite*, **soudain** *suddenly*, **vite** *quickly, fast*.

a. Most of these form also adverbs in **ment** for certain uses.

ADVERBS OF NEGATION.

241. A verb is made negative by putting the adverb **ne** before and **pas** (or **point**) after it—in a compound tense, before and after the auxiliary.

a. **Pas** and **point** are really nouns, meaning *step* and *point*, used adverbially to strengthen the negation, like English *not a bit* and the like.

b. The **ne** comes after the subject, but precedes a pronoun-object (136). It is abbreviated always to **n'** before a vowel or **h** mute (22c).

242. Examples of tenses inflected negatively are :

je ne suis pas, <i>I am not</i>	je n'avais pas eu, <i>I had not had</i>
tu n'es pas, <i>thou art not</i>	tu n'avais pas eu, <i>thou hadst not had</i>
il n'est pas, <i>he is not</i>	il n'avait pas eu, <i>he had not had</i>
nous ne sommes pas, <i>we are not</i>	nous n'avions pas eu, <i>we had not had</i>
vous n'êtes pas, <i>you are not</i>	vous n'aviez pas eu, <i>you had not had</i>
ils ne sont pas, <i>they are not</i>	ils n'avaient pas eu, <i>they had not had</i>

a. **Point** makes a stronger or more emphatic negative : thus, **il ne l'est point** *he is not so at all*.

b. **N'est-ce pas** is a much-used phrase, meaning *is it not so?* or corresponding to English repeated questions like *is he not?* *do they not?* and the like : thus, **il est encore malade, n'est-ce pas** *he is still ill, is he not?* **vous avez mon livre, n'est-ce pas** *you have my book, have you not?*

243. In certain cases **ne** stands alone without added **pas** or **point**, to negative the verb. This is the case :

a. Generally with the verbs **savoir**, **pouvoir**, **oser**, and **cesser**, especially when followed by an infinitive. Thus, **il ne peut tarder** *he cannot delay*, **elle n'oserait revenir** *she would not dare to return*.

b. After **si**, after rhetorical questions introduced by **que** or **qui**, after **il y a**, and in a negative clause depending on one that is negative or impliedly so : thus, **si ce n'est vous** *if it is not you*, **qui de nous n'a ses défauts** *who of us has not his faults?* **il y a trois mois que je ne l'ai vu** *I have not seen him these three months*, **vous n'avez pas un ami qui ne soit aussi le mien** *you have not a friend who is not also mine*.

c. In certain phrases : *as, n'importe no matter, n'avoir garde de take care not to.*

244. Ne is also used without second negative particle along with certain words which are regarded as forming with it a compound negative phrase, often to be rendered in English by a single negative word.

a. These negative phrases are especially **ne . . . rien** *nothing*, **ne . . . jamais** *never*, **ne . . . personne** *nobody*, **ne . . . aucun** *not any, none, no*, **ne . . . plus** *no longer, no more* (in sense of continuance of time), **ne . . . que** *only* (lit'ly, *not [else or other] than*), **ne . . . guère**, *hardly, scarcely*.

Thus, **je ne suis jamais malade** *I am never ill*, **il n'a vu personne** *he has seen no one*, **n'avez-vous rien** *have you nothing?* **je n'ai eu que trois francs** *I have only had three francs*, **personne ne l'a vu** *no one has seen him*, **nous ne l'avons plus** *we no longer have it*.

b. Of **ne . . . que**, meaning *only*, the **que** stands where *than* would stand if the expression were filled out : thus, **je ne verrai qu'elle** *I shall see only her*, **je ne la verrai que demain** *I shall see her only to-morrow*, **je ne la verrai que demain qu'après le dîner** *I shall see her only after the dinner to-morrow*. If the *only* qualifies the verb itself, a paraphrase is made with **faire do** : thus, **elle ne fait que pleurer** *she merely cries*, or **elle ne fait autre chose que pleurer** *she does nothing else than cry*. **Autre** *other* is not seldom used with **ne** alone : thus, **le droit n'est autre chose que la raison même** *right is nothing but reason itself*.

c. Not seldom, more than one second negative belongs with the same **ne** : thus, **je ne lui ai jamais rien donné** *I have never given him anything*, **je n'en dirai jamais rien à personne** *I will never say anything to any one about it*.

d. **Nul** *none, not any* (also its adverb **nullement** *in no wise*), and **ni . . . ni** *neither . . . nor*, though themselves negative, require also **ne** before the verb : thus, **ni vous ni moi ne le pouvons** *neither you nor I can do it*, **nul ne le saura** *none will know it*. The same is the case with **non**

plus not any more : thus, *elle ne l'aime non plus que moi* *she doesn't like it any more than I*.

e. For the use of the partitive noun after negative expressions, see 97b.

245. The negative **ne** belongs strictly to the verb, and can never be used except with a verb expressed. If the verb, then, is omitted (for example, in answers), the **ne** is also omitted, and the other word has by itself a negative sense : thus, *avez-vous des livres* *have you books ?* **pas un** *not one* ; *qu'avez-vous* *what have you ?* **rien** *nothing* ; *qui est ici* *who is here ?* **personne** *nobody*.

246. The negative word **non** is especially used as direct answer to a question, meaning *no*.

In this, as in most of its other uses, it may be followed by the second negative **pas** (rarely by **point**) : thus, *voulez-vous le faire ?* **non** (or **non pas**) *will you do it ? no*.

a. It also stands, in incomplete expression, for an omitted negative verb or clause : thus, *je gage que non* *I wager that it is not so*, *non que je le croie* *not* (i.e. *it is not the case*) *that I believe it*.

b. It is used to negative a particular member of a sentence which is not a verb : thus, *il demeure à la campagne*, **non loin d'ici** *he lives in the country, not far from here*, *il périt*, **non sans gloire** *he perished, not without glory*.

c. **Non plus** *not any more*, stands after a negative verb or after **ni** *nor*, and is often best rendered by *either* : thus, *je ne le ferai pas non plus* *I shall not do it either* (literally, *any more than he or than you, or the like*) ; *ni moi non plus* *nor I either*.

247. In dependent clauses a **ne** is often found used with a verb where no negation is really implied.

a. In clauses with the subjunctive depending on a word signifying fearing, hindering, doubting, or denying (see 270) : thus, *évitiez qu'il ne vous parle* *avoid his speaking*

to you, de peur qu'il ne vienne for fear he is coming, on ne doute pas qu'il n'aille it is not doubted that he is going.

b. Often after il y a . . . que, depuis que, avant que, sans que; and always after à moins que and de crainte or de peur que: thus, depuis que je ne vous ai vu since I have seen you, avant qu'il n'entre before he comes in, à moins qu'il ne vienne unless he come.

c. A ne is inserted before a verb following and depending on a comparative: thus, c'est plus vrai que vous ne le croyez it is truer than you think for.

PREPOSITIONS.

248. The use of prepositions in French corresponds so closely to the English usage that only a few special points call for notice here.

a. The two prepositions de of, from, and à to, at are those of which the uses are most various, depart most widely from the simple original meaning of the words, and are most analogous with inflectional endings, of genitive and dative respectively; they have been, therefore, most fully treated above.

b. Thus, the uses of de as connecting one noun with another in the manner of a genitive are stated in 87; as making a partitive noun, 95-100; as connecting a noun with an adjective, 114; as denoting material and measure, 90, 91; after a verb, 262; as preceding an infinitive, 278; and so on.

c. In like manner the use of à before a noun in the sense of an indirect object or dative, 88; between an adjective and noun, 114d; before an infinitive, 279-80; between a verb and a noun, 262; and so on. À is also used in such phrases as c'est bien à vous that is good of you or in you; and in many elliptical phrases: as, à moi or au secours help! (i.e., come to me, come for help).

249. With the names of cities and towns à is used to express both *to* and *in* (literally, *into*). With the name of

a country **en** is used for *in* or *to* (without the article), but before a plural name and in one or two other cases **à** is used. Thus : **il est à Paris** *he is at Paris*, **je vais en France** *I am going to France*, **elles sont aux États-Unis** *they are in the United States*.

250. Dans and **en** *in, into*. — **Dans** is more definite and **en** more general and vague. **En** is almost never used before the definite article or possessive.

a. **Dans** is used instead of **en** before the name of a country when accompanied by an adjective: **dans toute l'Angleterre** *in all England*.

b. In expressions of time **en** is used to mean *in* the year, the season, the month, etc.: thus, **en mil huit cent trente, en été** *in 1830, in summer*; but **dans la même année** *in the same year*.

c. **En** is used elliptically to signify *in the character of, like, as*; thus **agir en honnête homme** *act like an honest man*.

251. Sans *without*. This preposition is peculiar in being treated in some respects as a negative word (since it so distinctly implies a negation of accompaniment): thus, **sans rien dire** *without saying anything*, **sans or ni argent** *without gold or silver*, **sans nul doute** *without any doubt*. After it, the partitive sense of a noun is regularly left unexpressed: thus, **avec de l'or mais sans argent** *with gold but without silver*.

252. Many prepositions are also used along with a preceding preposition or adverb, forming a prepositional phrase: thus, **jusqu'à la ville** *as far as the town*, **quant à moi** *as for me*, **d'après ce qu'il nous dit** *according to what he tells us*.

253. Many prepositional phrases are also made up of adverbs and adverbial phrases followed by **de** *of*; thus, **autour de ma chambre** *around my room*, **le long du fleuve** *along the river*, **au-delà du tombeau** *beyond the tomb*.

254. For prepositions with the infinitive see 277-82.

EXERCISE 16.

ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

VOCABULARY.

bientôt, <i>soon</i>	presque, <i>almost</i>
autant que, <i>as much as</i>	tout de suite, <i>at once</i>
pas du tout, <i>not at all</i>	constant, adj. <i>constant</i>
possible, adj. <i>possible</i>	pendant, <i>during</i>
avant, <i>before</i>	chez, <i>at the house or home of</i>
jusqu'à, <i>as far as</i>	prochain, adj. <i>near, next</i>
le dîner, <i>the dinner</i>	le déjeuner, <i>the breakfast</i>

[Also the words and expressions explained in the text.]

I.

1. Combien de livres avez-vous? 2. Je n'ai que ces livres que voici ; mais j'en aurai bientôt d'autres. 3. Quant à moi, j'en ai presque autant que vous ; venez chez moi, je vous les ferai voir. 4. Je m'en vais chez mon frère, je veux y aller avant le dîner. 5. Ils sont venus chez nous pendant le déjeuner, mais ils s'en sont allés tout de suite. 6. Ce garçon ne fait que lire ; on ne le voit guère sans livre. 7. Il lit bien, mais il n'écrit que très mal. 8. Parlons bas, on peut nous entendre. 9. Je ne vois personne, et je n'ai jamais rien dit de méchant. 10. Voulez-vous venir jusqu'à la ville ou non ? 11. Je vous ai déjà dit que non ; il y a cinq mois que je n'y ai été, et je ne veux nullement y aller maintenant. 12. Moi, je ne l'aime pas non plus, mais il faut que j'y aille constamment. 13. Nous avons été en Angleterre en 1888, et nous y irons encore l'année prochaine. 14. Elle ne nous

écrit pas souvent, mais elle nous écrit le plus possible.

15. Elle veut toujours paraître mieux qu'elle n'est.

16. Voilà deux lettres qu'elle vient d'écrire; malheureusement je ne peux guère les lire.

II.

1. Do you see this girl often? 2. I have not seen her for three months, but I shall see her oftener next year. 3. Speak louder, I do not hear you at all. 4. There are two men; do you know them? 5. He does not know them at all, nor I either. 6. We do not like this man at all, he talks only of his house and his money. 7. He wishes to appear less poor than he is, but he is now without friends or money. 8. He has never told anyone how much money he has. 9. Doesn't he come to your house constantly? 10. I tell you no; I hardly see him at my house. 11. Here is some money; fortunately I am much richer than you. 12. Why do you not write to him oftener? 13. Unfortunately he does not read well, and he writes worse than he reads. 14. He is coming here in April, and he will be here during the next month. 15. Go quickly; as for him, he will not be there before dinner.

CONJUNCTIONS.

255. The commonest conjunctions are *et and*, *mais but*, *ou or*, *ni nor*, *aussi also*, *car for*, *donc then*, *or now*, *ainsi thus*, *comme as*, *puisque since*, *as*, *si if*, *lorsque or quand when*.

256. Correlative conjunctions, used in successive clauses, are :

et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i>	ou . . . ou, <i>either . . . or</i>
ni . . . ni, <i>neither . . . nor</i>	soit . . . soit, <i>whether . . . or</i>
plus . . . plus, <i>the more . . . the more</i>	moins . . . moins, <i>the less . . . the less</i>
autant . . . autant, <i>as much . . . as</i>	tantôt . . . tantôt, <i>now . . . now</i>

257. Many phrases having the value of conjunctions are made by adding the conjunction **que** to a preposition or adverb or adverbial phrase : thus, **aussitôt que je la verrai** *as soon as I shall see her*, **ainsi que je vous ai dit** *as I told you*.

a. When the conjunctions and conjunction-phrases containing **que**—as **lorsque** *when*, **quoique** *although*, **pendant que** *while*, **parce que** *because*—are to be repeated, they are generally repeated by **que** alone ; and **que** is likewise used in repetition instead of **quand**, **comme**, and **si** : thus, **lorsque l'empereur fut revenu et qu'il eut visité le camp** *when the emperor had returned and when he had visited the camp*, **s'il n'a que peu d'argent et qu'il veuille en avoir plus** *if he has only a little money and wants more*.

b. Especially in familiar language, **que** is sometimes used instead of **lorsque** *when*, **avant que** *before*, **depuis que** *since*, **jusqu'à ce que** *until*, and **que . . . ne** instead of **sans que** *unless* : thus, **à peine était-il sorti que la maison s'écroula** *he had hardly gone out, when the house fell in*, **je n'y irai point que tout ne soit prêt** *I shall not go there unless (or till or before) everything is ready*.

For the conjunctions with a following subjunctive see 272.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

258. If a verb has more than one subject of different persons, the agreement of the verb in person is as it would be if the different subjects

were summed up in one personal pronoun : thus, *mon ami et moi sommes tombés d'accord* *my friend and I have agreed*, *vous et vos amis êtes tombés d'accord* *you and your friends have agreed*.

a. More often, such compound subjects are repeated by means of a pronoun that includes them : thus, *vous et moi, nous sommes contents* *you and I are satisfied*, *vous et lui, vous savez l'affaire* *you and he understand the matter*.

259. It is quite common in French that the true or logical subject of the verb is repeated by a pronoun as grammatical subject (see 156).

a. The logical subject is sometimes preceded by *que*, as a sort of correlative to the grammatical subject *ce* : thus, *c'est une charmante chose qu'une femme* *it is a charming thing, a woman (is)*. And in elliptical expression the *que* remains, even when *ce* and the verb are omitted : thus, *un singulier homme que ce roi* *a singular man, this king* !

b. A preceding subject is also often repeated by the grammatical subject *ce* : thus, *le temps, c'est de l'argent* *time is money*, *commander à ses passions, c'est remporter la plus belle des victoires* *to control one's passions is to gain the best of victories*. The effect of this repetition is to emphasize the subject.

c. Repetition of the subject by a pronoun is usual in inverted clauses after *à peine*, *encore*, *peut-être*, *vainement*, and the like : thus, *à peine mon ami fut-il sorti* *hardly had my friend gone out*, *peut-être la fortune reviendra-t-elle* *perhaps fortune will return*.

260. Much more generally than in English, the pronoun subject is repeated before each verb. Thus, *je l'aime et je l'admire* *I love and admire him*.

261. A verb in French does not take two direct objects, but only a direct and an indirect together.

a. Following this rule, the verbs *laisser* *allow*, *voir* *see*, *entendre* *hear*, *ouïr* *hear*, and *faire* *make*, *cause* (see 228, 6), when followed by a dependent infinitive having a direct object, have their own logical object made indirect: thus, *je l'ai entendu dire à votre ami* *I heard your friend say it*, *je le lui ai vu essayer* *I saw him try it*, *j'ai fait lire votre lettre à mon ami* *I made my friend read your letter*.

262. Many verbs which are transitive in English require in French a *de* or an *à* before their object: thus, *il change d'opinion* *he changes his opinion*, *il abuse de votre bonté* *he abuses your kindness*, *il s'approcha du feu* *he approached the fire*, *il faut obéir aux lois* *one must obey the laws*, *il plaît à tout le monde* *he pleases every one*.

SPECIAL USES OF THE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MODE.

263. a. The present is often used instead of the past in lively narration: thus, *la nuit approche*, *l'instant arrive*; *César se présente* *night draws near*, *the moment comes*; *Cæsar presents himself*.

b. The present is regularly used for past action continued into the present, or for what has been and still is: thus, *il est ici depuis une semaine* *he has been here for a week*.

264. As between the two simple past tenses, imperfect and preterit, the PRETERIT expresses simply past action, without further implication; the IMPERFECT expresses past action viewed as

continuous, as a lasting condition or quality, as habitual, repeated, or the like.

a. This distinction is in part quite clear and easy to make, as in cases where our language says or might say *I was giving*, or *I kept giving*, or *I gave repeatedly*, or *I used to give*, or the like, the imperfect being then required; but it is often very difficult. It depends in great part on the relation of the action to some other : especially when one action is represented as still going on at the time another occurs, the former is imperfect, and the latter preterit : thus, in English, *he was* (impf. *était*) *there as I entered* (pret. *entrai*), *quand j'osai regarder, j'étais seul* *when I ventured to look, I was alone*, *il était nuit noire quand nous arrivâmes* *it was black night when we arrived*.

b. The imperfect is regularly used for what had been and still was : thus, *il y était depuis longtemps* *he had been there for a long time*.

265. The PERFECT answers in the main to the English perfect, being the expression for past action with some reference to the present involved.

But there are also considerable differences between the two, especially as the French often uses the perfect where we set the simple preterit : thus,

a. To express general facts of the past, not in connection with their surroundings : thus, *Alexandre a détruit l'empire des Perses* *the Persian empire was destroyed by Alexander*, *Dieu a créé le monde* *God created the world*.

b. Especially, the perfect is very often used to express recent events, connected with the present as having taken place within a division of time now current.

Thus, *je me suis levé à six heures ce matin* *I got up at 6 o'clock this morning*; *lui avez-vous parlé* *did you speak to him*.

266. The future corresponds to the English future.

a. The French, however, often uses the future in compound sentences where it is logically more correct, but where the English has the present instead: thus, **vous direz ce qu'il vous plaira** *you will say what you [shall] please*, **tant qu'il vivra** *as long as he lives (or shall live)*.

b. The future is used after **si** only in the sense of *whether*: thus, **je ne sais s'il viendra** *I know not whether he will come*.

267. The **CONDITIONAL** agrees in general in use with the English conditional, or verb-phrase made with the auxiliaries *would* and *should*.

EXERCISE 17.

CONJUNCTIONS ; SUBJECT AND OBJECT ; INDICATIVE
TENSES.

VOCABULARY.

abuser (de), *abuse*
obéir (à), *obey*
depuis, *since, for*
se moquer (de), *ridicule*
la bonté, *kindness*
seul, seule, *alone*

changer (de), *change*
emprunter, *borrow (from, à)*
s'approcher (de), *come near, approach*
le feu, *the fire*
la chose, *the thing*

I.

1. Il a emprunté de l'argent à son père, et lui et moi nous nous en allons tout de suite. 2. Je ne peux aller avec vous; il faut que je change de robe. 3. Approchez-vous du feu, monsieur; vous et votre fils, vous devez avoir froid. 4. Merci, madame, nous ne voulons pas

abuser de votre bonté. 5. Pendant que je lui parlais, il s'approcha de la table et y mit ce livre. 6. Lorsque je le trouvai, il y était depuis deux heures. 7. Nous sommes à Paris depuis deux jours, mais nous n'avons encore vu que très peu de choses. 8. Elle s'est levée ce matin à six heures, ainsi que vous le lui avez ordonné. 9. Plus il perd d'argent, plus il en emprunte à tous ses amis. 10. Je ne sais s'il s'en ira, mais je ne m'en irai pas pendant qu'il sera ici. 11. C'est un joli enfant que ce petit garçon. 12. Je ne l'ai pas vu, parce qu'il est venu ce matin, et que je n'étais pas chez moi. 13. À peine ces messieurs furent-ils venus, qu'ils voulaient s'en aller. 14. Ou ils ne vous ont pas entendu, ou ils ne vous ont pas obéi. 15. Il est vrai qu'ils se sont moqués de nous, mais nous ne leur en voulons point. 16. J'étais toute seule lorsqu'il s'approcha de moi et qu'il me donna la lettre.

II.

1. It is a good book, this history. 2. I borrowed it of my friend, but I have not yet read it. 3. I do not know whether I shall read it, but when I have read it I will give it to you. 4. My sister and I will read it. 5. While we were at my uncle's, we went to bed at six o'clock. 6. While you were talking to him, he went away. 7. He has been at school since nine o'clock. 8. They were punished because they did not obey their teacher. 9. We had been at Paris for two years when we changed (our) house. 10. He is either sick or cold; why does he not come near the fire? 11. When she has come and has changed her dress, I

will tell you of it. 12. Did you hear the boy say that he had done it? 13. I was alone when he came near the house, and I saw that he wanted to speak to me. 14. While he was speaking of you, I saw you. 15. The more we see him, the more we love him.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

268. The subjunctive is the mode of contingency, anticipation, expectation, requirement. It belongs for the most part to dependent clauses, and is usually introduced by the conjunction *que* *that*.

a. The subjunctive is sometimes used without *que* in an optative or imperative sense: thus, **puissiez-vous réussir** *may you succeed*, **ainsi soit-il** *so be it*.

b. Also sometimes in a concessive or conditional sense: thus, **vienne qui voudra, je resterai** *come who will, I shall stay*.

269. The subjunctive occurs in a clause used as logical subject of an impersonal whenever anticipation, requirement, or the like is implied: thus, **il suffit qu'elle l'ait avoué** *it is enough that she has confessed it*, **c'est dommage que je l'aie perdu** *it is a pity that I have lost it*, **il est possible que nous ne revenions pas** *it is possible that we do not come back*.

a. But the indicative is used if the clause is a distinct statement of fact: thus, **il est vrai qu'elle n'est pas arrivée** *it is true that she has not come*.

270. The subjunctive stands in a clause which is used as the object of certain verbs: namely,

a. verbs of wishing, permitting, forbidding, expecting, etc.; *b.* verbs signifying regarding with a feeling, such as joy, doubt, apprehension, etc.; *c.* verbs of thinking, supposing, and stating (but usually only if the sentence is negative, interrogative, or conditional). Thus, *il veut que nous disions la vérité* *he wants us to tell the truth*, *je défends qu'on sorte* *I forbid any one to go out*, *je m'étonne qu'il ne nous voie pas* *I am surprised that he does not see us*, *je crains qu'il ne vienne* *I fear lest he come*, *je ne crois pas qu'il soit arrivé* *I don't believe he has come*, *s'il affirme qu'il soit ainsi* *if he affirms that it is so*.

271. A subjunctive is used in an adjective clause—i.e., such as is introduced by a relative pronoun and qualifies a noun—*a.* when the noun qualified stands in a construction implying anticipation, as expectation, purpose, etc.; *b.* after a superlative or numeral word akin to a superlative; *c.* often after a negative, interrogative, or conditional clause: thus, *je cherche une retraite où je sois tranquille* *I seek a retreat where I may be quiet*, *envoyez-moi quelqu'un qui me rende ce service* *send me some one who will do me this service*, *c'est le meilleur homme que je connaisse* *he is the best man I know*, *il n'y a personne qui ne soit venu* *there is no one who has not come*, *s'il a un couteau qui soit bon* *if he has a knife that is good*.

272. The subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses—that is, such as limit or qualify the ac-

tion of a verb—in many cases, where a looking forward, anticipation, contingency is implied.

a. These clauses are generally introduced either by **que** after a relative word to be rendered by *whatever, whoever, whenever*, etc. (see 177), or by a conjunction or conjunctive phrase. Of these phrases requiring to be followed by subjunctive the commonest are **afin que** *in order that*, **avant que** *before*, **bien que** and **quoique** *although*, **sans que** *without*, **pour que** *in order that*, **jusqu'à ce que** *until*, **pourvu que** *provided that*, **au cas que** *in case that*: thus, **quoi qu'il me dise, je ne le crois pas** *whatever he may say, I do not believe him*, **je ne veux voir qui que ce soit** *I will not see any one, whoever he may be*, **quelque bon qu'il soit, je ne l'aime pas** *however good he may be, I do not love him*; **sortons avant qu'il soit trop tard** *let us go out before it is too late*, **je resterai jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne** *I will stay until he comes*, **faites-le, afin que je puisse vous voir** *do it, in order that I may see you*.

b. After **sans que**, the verb can hardly be rendered except by our infinitive in *ing*: thus, **sans que personne s'en aperçoive** *without any one's perceiving it*.

273. The subjunctive is used in certain special cases: a. **si** *if* may be followed by the subj. impf., otherwise only by cases of the indicative; b. a **que** followed by **ne** in the sense of *without, unless, until*, takes the subjunctive: thus, **il n'a jamais rien fait qu'il ne me l'ait dit** *he has never done anything without telling me*.

274. The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause is in general governed by that of the principal clause, being past (imp. or plup.) if the latter is past or conditional, and present (or perf.) if it is present or future.

IMPERATIVE.

275. The imperative has in general the same uses in French as in English.

a. In the absence of a first person singular, the first plural is sometimes used with that value: thus, **soyons homme, m'écriai-je** *let me play the man, cried I to myself*.

b. Some imperatives are used interjectionally; the commonest are *allons* *come, come on*, *tiens* or *tenez* *hold ! stop a moment, see here, take notice*, and the like, *voyons* *let's see, see here*, *va* *go !* i.e., *pshaw, nonsense*, and the like.

EXERCISE 18.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

VOCABULARY.

craindre (17), *fear*

attendre, *await, expect*

impossible, *impossible*

défendre, *forbid*

s'étonner, *be astonished*

tenir (62), *hold*

[Also the conjunctions given in the text.]

I.

1. J'attendrai jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne. 2. Il veut que nous soyons ici, afin qu'il puisse nous voir. 3. Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, et je crains qu'il ne soit malade. 4. Il n'est guère possible qu'il soit malade sans que nous ne le sachions. 5. Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas écrit à son père. 6. Il est possible qu'il reçoive une lettre de lui ce soir. 7. Attendons que la lettre soit venue et qu'il l'ait lue. 8. C'est la première lettre qu'il ait reçue de son fils. 9. Je m'étonne qu'il ait pu le faire, mais il n'y a rien qui lui soit impossible. 10. Son père avait défendu qu'il le fît, et nous craignons qu'il ne le punisse. 11. Qu'il me le défende ou non, je le ferai. 12. Tiens, je ne vous voyais pas; cherchez-vous quelque chose que vous ayez perdu? 13. Nous allons avec vous à l'église, à moins que vous ne nous le défendiez. 14. Il a défendu qu'elle parle à qui

que ce soit. 15. Quelque bonne qu'elle soit, je crains qu'elle ne lui obéisse pas.

II.

1. Do you believe he will come? 2. We are astonished that he is not here already, but we will wait until he comes. 3. Are you not afraid that he is ill? 4. He will come unless he is ill. 5. Whatever you may say, I do not believe that he is a bad man. 6. He is the best friend we have, and we do not wish him to go away. 7. However rich this man may be, it seems that he is not happy. 8. There is no one who is happy. 9. It is possible that we can come, but I fear that it will be forbidden us. 10. They gave him the book in order that he might read it, but I do not believe that he will do it. 11. His father has forbidden that he read it. 12. We were afraid that you would not come, but we rejoice that you have come. 13. They never come without my knowing it.

THE INFINITIVE.

276. The use of the infinitive in French corresponds in general with our English usage, and demands little explanation here.

277. The English *to* as sign of the infinitive is represented by both *de* and *à*. Most verbs, adjectives, and nouns require either *à* or *de* before a following dependent infinitive.

278. Often, the reason for using *de*, as meaning properly *of*, *from*, is to be seen : thus, *il est temps de partir* *it is*

time to leave (literally, *time of leaving*), **on nous a défendu de parler** *we are forbidden to speak* (literally, *kept off from speaking*), **il a cessé d'être** *he has ceased to be* (literally, *ceased from being*), and so on. But in considerable part this is not the case, and the distinction has to be learned for each phrase.

279. **À** also often has the same value before an infinitive as before an ordinary noun, the sense of *to, unto, toward*, being plainly to be seen : thus, **tout conspire à me nuire** *everything conspires to injure me (to my injury)*, **je l'invite à venir** *I invite him to come*, **elle les exhorta à demeurer fermes** *she exhorted them to remain firm* ; but often, as in English, the reason for the use of **à** is not clear, the **à** being a mere arbitrary sign of the infinitive.

a. After certain verbs, especially **avoir** and **être**, **à** is used in a kind of future sense (much as in English) expressing something anticipated or obligatory : thus, **j'ai à te parler** *I have to talk to you*, **il est à plaindre** *he is to be pitied*, **il me reste beaucoup à faire** *there is much left for me to do* ; or, without a verb, in an attributive sense : thus, **une chose à faire** *a thing to be done*.

280. Some verbs admit either **de** or **à** before a following dependent infinitive. Sometimes the choice is a matter of indifference, or nearly so : thus, **il commence à écrire** or **d'écrire** *he begins to write* ;—sometimes it depends upon a difference of construction or of meaning : thus, **j'ai résolu de partir** or **je me suis résolu à partir** *I have resolved to leave*, **je vous laisse à penser** *I leave you to imagine*, **elle ne laisse pas de plaire** *she does not cease to please*.

281. A few other prepositions are followed by the infinitive directly ; they are : **après** *after*, **pour** *in order to, to*, **sans** *without*, **par** *by*.

a. Of these, **par** is little used, and **après** almost only with the perfect infinitive : thus, **après avoir dîné** *after having dined*.

282. Many prepositional phrases are also followed by the infinitive. It is an English infinitive in *ing* which in very many cases corresponds to the French infinitive after a preposition or prepositional phrase : thus, **avant de mourir**

before dying, sans lui parler without speaking to him, à force de la voir by dint of seeing her.

283. The infinitive without a preceding sign is used :

a. Sometimes as subject or predicate of a verb : thus, **parler est mieux** *to speak is better*, **s'entretenir avec son ami, c'est penser tout haut** *to talk with a friend is to think aloud.*

b. After the quasi-auxiliaries **vouloir, pouvoir**, etc. ; after verbs of perceiving and declaring, of coming and going, of hoping, desiring, intending, and the like : thus, **j'espère le trouver** *I hope to find him.*

c. After certain verbs of declaring, believing, and the like, if their subject is also the subject of the action expressed by the infinitive : thus, **il assure ne l'avoir jamais vue** *he declares he never saw her*, **je crois m'être trompé** *I believe I was mistaken* ; also after verbs of perceiving, and sometimes of declaring, having a direct object which is the subject of the infinitive action : thus, **je le vois venir** *I see him coming.*

d. In incomplete or exclamatory expression : thus, **que faire** *what [is one] to do ?* **donnez-moi de quoi écrire** *give me wherewith to write.*

PARTICIPLES.

284. The present participle in its participial use is not varied for gender and number ; but when used adjectively it is varied like any other adjective to agree with its noun. Thus, **deux hommes parlant ensemble** *two men talking together*, **des paroles consolantes** *consoling words*, **une mère consolant sa fille** *a mother consoling her child.*

a. Often, where we use a present participle, the French has a relative clause : thus, **je le vois qui vient** *I see him coming.*

285. a. When used with être, the past participle,

except in reflexive verbs, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

b. When used with *avoir*, and also with *être* in reflexive verbs, the participle never agrees with the subject; but it agrees with the direct object in case that object precedes the verb.

c. The participle of an impersonal verb, or one used impersonally, does not vary: thus, *les pluies qu'il y a eu the rains there have been.*

d. The participle does not agree with an adverbial object, specification of time, etc.: thus, *les années qu'il a duré the years it has lasted.*

EXERCISE 19.

INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

VOCABULARY.

promettre (36), *promise*

le temps, *time*

mourir (38), *die*

prendre (50), *take*

1. Qui vous a dit de venir? 2. On m'a défendu de venir, mais il a voulu me voir avant de mourir, et j'ai cru devoir le faire. 3. Combien de temps a-t-il encore à vivre? 4. Il est mort à six heures sans nous connaître. 5. Il me serait impossible de vous dire combien je suis malheureux de l'avoir perdu. 5. Nous n'avions pas fini de lire ce livre, lorsqu'il nous l'a pris pour le donner à son fils. 6. Vous êtes bien bon de me le donner, mais je ne crois pas devoir le prendre. 7. Il m'a promis de le chercher pour me le rendre. 8. Je voudrais l'inviter à dîner chez nous, mais je n'ai jamais réussi à la trouver chez elle. 9.

Elle ne peut dîner chez vous, mais elle a promis de venir déjeuner chez nous demain. 10. Je n'ai rien à faire, si ce n'est de lire ce livre-ci. 11. Il ne faut pas parler d'un livre sans l'avoir lu. 12. À force d'en entendre parler il croit l'avoir déjà lu. 13. Vous ne faites que parler, au lieu de manger. 14. Je vous défends d'emprunter de l'argent à qui que ce soit. 15. N'ayant rien à lui donner, je ne vais plus le voir.

II.

1. Did you invite him to dine with you? 2. He promised to come and dine with me, but it is impossible for him to come before he has finished working. 3. One ought to eat before working. 4. My father has forbidden me to eat cakes before dining. 5. By dint of working he has succeeded in doing all that he wanted to do. 6. It is possible to do all that one wants to do. 7. After having promised to give me the flowers, he gave them to his sister. 8. Why did you look for me if you had nothing to say to me? 9. I looked for you to give you the flowers which I have promised you. 10. I have not the time to tell all that I have to tell you. 11. Having borrowed money from all his friends, he can find no one to (*pour*) give him any. 12. Take this book; if you succeed in reading it I will give it to you. 13. We told him to choose a book, but he would not choose without having read them. 14. We saw them come, but we did not believe that we knew them. 15. He lived a long time at Paris before dying.

SELECTED SENTENCES

FOR PRACTICE IN APPLYING THE RULES OF THE GRAMMAR.

1. ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

¹ Elle avait une voile blanche sur la tête. ² Viens, Jeanne, donne-moi la main. ³ Anne, belle-sœur de Guillaume III., et fille de Jacques II., mariée à George, prince de Danemark, était l'héritière constitutionnelle de la couronne. ⁴ Ma fille est veuve d'un homme qui était fort considéré dans le monde. ⁵ Monsieur est Persan? C'est une chose extraordinaire. ⁶ J'ai une drôle d'idée dans la tête. ⁷ Votre coquine de Toinette est devenue plus insolente que jamais. ⁸ Le poudre à canon change^a le système de la guerre; la peinture à l'huile se développe, et couvre l'Europe des chefs d'œuvre d'art. ⁹ On parlait de Thèbes aux cent portes. ¹⁰ J'ai froid aux pieds, dit-il. ¹¹ On a des bras, pas^b de travail; on a du cœur, point d'ouvrage. ¹² Ce sont^c des héros qui fondent des empires, et des laches qui les perdent. ¹³ Ils disaient qu'il n'était point avec des garnisons que l'on prend des états, mais avec des armées. ¹⁴ Il n'est point de noblesse où manque la vertu. ¹⁵ J'ai toujours préservé ma foi de chrétien. ¹⁶ Il n'y a rien d'étroit, rien de limité, dans la religion. ¹⁷ Les habitants de la Nouvelle-Hollande ont le nez gros, les lèvres grosses, et la bouche grande. ¹⁸ On éprouva tout-à-coup les hor-

^a 263, a. ^b 245. ^c 156, b.

reurs de la famine. ¹⁹ Quand la colère me prend, ordinairement la mémoire me quitte. ²⁰ À sa suite parut le jeune Mazarin. ²¹ C'était un des rois qui ont, après un siège de dix ans, renversé la fameuse Troie. ²² Les ruines de Pompéies sont proches du Vésuve. ²³ Le général Buonaparte avait toute une société à ^a organizer.

2. ADJECTIVES AND NUMERALS.

¹ Le frère et la sœur furent charmés. ² Lisez les commentaires de César ; c'est un style d'une netteté et d'une fermeté singulières. ³ Laurence vit la vieille femme aveugle étendue sur son lit. ⁴ Ah, madame! excusez mon aveugle douleur. ⁵ Je m'étais assis devant cette vieille petite table noire que vous connaissez. ⁶ L'aveugle ne répondit rien. ⁷ Va trouver de ma part ce jeune ambitieux. ⁸ Je n'en suis pas surpris ; son caractère était si différent du vôtre. ⁹ Oswald était mécontent de lui-même. ¹⁰ Il est très adroit à tous les exercices. ¹¹ Elle fut sublime de soins et d'attentions pour son vieux père. ¹² Les scélérats! ils m'ont attaché les ^b mains, comme vous le voyez ; ils étaient plus de vingt. ¹³ J'étais ^c depuis une demi-heure environ plongé dans une sorte de torpeur. ¹⁴ Hier, à dix heures et demie, le roi déclara qu'il épousait la princesse de Pologne. ¹⁵ Tel était l'état de la France, lorsque Louis seize monta sur le trône, le onze mai, 1774.

3. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

¹ J'ai pensé à elle d'abord, c'était mon devoir ; à moi ensuite, c'était mon droit. ² Vous l'appellez hypocrite ; moi, je le crois dévot, sincère, et de bonne foi. ³ C'est moi qui suis coupable, et qu'il faut condamner. ⁴ Je ne puis sans horreur me regarder moi-même.

⁵ On ne loue point un homme ou un auteur comme eux-mêmes se louent. ⁶ Vous n'étiez pas coupable envers moi ; c'est moi qui le fus envers moi-même. ⁷ Vous êtes Ardasire ? lui dis-je.—Oui, perfide, répondit-elle ; je la suis. ⁸ Voyez Frégus et Ravenne qui ont été des ports et qui ne le sont plus. ⁹ Nous avons, vous et moi, besoin de tolérance. ¹⁰ Il est beau de triompher de soi. ¹¹ Il est plus aisé d'être sage pour les autres que de l'être pour soi-même. ¹² J'étais indigne de vous, et j'en rougis. ¹³ C'était elle, j'en étais sûr. ¹⁴ Pour avoir de vrais amis, il faut être capable d'en faire et digne d'en avoir. ¹⁵ Partez, j'y consens ; mais au moins ne découragez pas les autres. ¹⁶ Il est vrai qu'il m'occupe sans cesse ; et même cette nuit j'y songeais. ¹⁷ J'ai dîné hier avec lui ; je lui disais : Vous mangez trop, mon oncle. ¹⁸ Suis-je bien informé ? Oui, mon président. ¹⁹ Je me suis blessé à la main. ²⁰ Cette vie, je l'ai en grande partie parcourue^a. J'en connais les promesses, les réalités, les déceptions.

4. DEMONSTRATIVE, RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

¹ C'est cette partie de notre histoire contemporaine que je vais raconter aujourd'hui. ² Ce qui nous a le plus manqué dans nos désastres, ce ne sont pas des hommes, ce sont des chefs capables. ³ Monsieur veut-il que je le conduise du côté du parc ?—C'est inutile, je sais le chemin. ⁴ Il est le dieu du peuple et celui des soldats. ⁵ Celui qui gouverne doit être le plus obéissant à la loi. ⁶ Celui-là est bon qui fait du bien aux autres. ⁷ La liberté est devenue la créancière de tous les citoyens : les uns lui doivent leur industrie, les autres leur fortune ; ceux-ci leurs conseils, ceux-là leurs bras. ⁸ Qui vous a fait poète ?—Le malheur.

° Seigneur, mon Dieu, que je suis malheureuse ! qu'est-ce que je vais devenir ? ¹⁰ Que de clemence alors ! plus tard, que de bourreaux ! ¹¹ Quoi de plus malheureux que sa situation ! ¹² Insensé que j'étais de croire à leur bonne foi ! ¹³ Moi qui suis royaliste, je le dis franchement. ¹⁴ Dis-moi, qui es-tu, toi qui me parles ainsi ? ¹⁵ Heureux le peuple dont l'histoire est ennuyeuse. ¹⁶ C'est un homme sur la vie duquel reposent d'énormes capitaux. ¹⁷ L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort. ¹⁸ J'ai de quoi me défendre, et de quoi vous répondre. ¹⁹ Qui sert bien son pays n'a pas besoin d'aïeux. ²⁰ Depuis quelque temps je ne sais ni ce que vous devenez, ni ce que vous faites. ²¹ Qui que ce soit, parlez, et ne le craignez pas. ²² Désormais je ne douterai de quoi que ce soit. ²³ En passant nous saluions et l'on nous saluait. ²⁴ On ne surmonte le vice qu'en le fuyant^a. ²⁵ Hélas ! aucun son ne frappait notre oreille. ²⁶ Nous autres diplomates profitons volontiers des fautes de nos collègues. ²⁷ Avez-vous de l'or et de l'argent ? me disent-ils ; nous ne souhaitons pas autre chose. ²⁸ Quelque corrompues que soient nos mœurs, le vice n'a pas encore perdu toute sa honte. ²⁹ Chaque condition a ses dégoûts, et à chaque état sont attachées ses amertumes. ³⁰ Toute confiance est dangereuse, si ^b elle n'est entière.

5. PASSIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

¹ L'esprit féodal a été détruit en France par le cardinal de Richelieu. ² Un peuple si juste devait être chéri des dieux. ³ Il paraît qu'il s'est admirablement conduit là-bas ; on l'a nommé capitaine. ⁴ Les soldats sont faits pour se battre. ⁵ Il vous est défendu de vous amuser ainsi. ⁶ Te souviens-tu de la petite commune de Trégarzec ? ⁷ Celui qui croit trouver en soi-même de quoi pouvoir se passer de tout le

monde se trompe fort. ⁸ Qu'est-ce qu'ils se disent donc devant moi? Vous le ^a voyez, monsieur; nous nous faisons nos confidences. ⁹ Nous nous regardions sans rien comprendre.^b ¹⁰ C'est singulier, . . . il me semble que j'ai peur. ¹¹ Il vaut mieux céder; c'est plus prudent. ¹² Sa mère était morte il y avait longtemps, bien longtemps. ¹³ Des cris s'élevèrent de tous côtés, et un cri s'échappa des lèvres de la petite fille. ¹⁴ Il s'agit de savoir, il ne s'agit pas seulement de parler. ¹⁵ Il suffit que vous le disiez pour que je le croie. ¹⁶ Il n'y a pas trop de soleil, et il y a de la chaleur.

6. ADVERBS AND NEGATIVE EXPRESSION.

¹ Tremblez, tremblez, méchants; voici venir la foudre. ² Nous voilà mangeant et buvant, lui du moins. ³ Le soif de l'or, voilà le principe des crimes et des malheurs. ⁴ Vous dites que non, je dis que si. ⁵ J'ai trouvé ce matin un livre que voici. ⁶ Il n'y a point de siècle que nous connaissions ^c aussi bien que le siècle de Louis XIV. ⁷ C'est pourtant bien triste de ne jamais danser, dit Landry. ⁸ Il n'y a que ce valet qui soit suspect ici; Dorante n'a qu'à le chasser. ⁹ Je n'ai plus rien à vous apprendre. ¹⁰ Je n'ai jamais rien vu qui imprime tant de terreur. ¹¹ En toute affaire ils ne font que songer au moyen d'exercer leur langue. ¹² Il n'a eu nul part à cette expédition. ¹³ Certes il est bien malheureux, mais il ne peut être cruel. ¹⁴ Je ne sais si le marquis me pardonnerait. ¹⁵ Qui de nous, monsieur, n'est sujet à l'erreur? ¹⁶ Si je n'étais dans cette prison, je serais dans une autre. ¹⁷ Quoi, cousine! Personne ne t'est venu rendre visite? Personne. ¹⁸ Puis rien, pas même une plainte, ne succéda au cri de Guillaume. ¹⁹ Elle a raison!—Ma foi, j'ai soutenu que non. ²⁰ J'aime votre personne et non votre fortune. ²¹ Pour moi, je n'ai

pas grand'chose à dire.—Ni moi non plus. ²² Nous avons peur qu'elle ne nous grondât. ²³ Depuis que je ne vous ai vu, il s'est passé de bien grandes choses. ²⁴ Oh! tu m'ennuies; qu'ai-je besoin d'être mieux que je ne suis? ²⁵ Je ne l'ai pas, à moins qu'il ne soit dans mon lit.

7. PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

¹ N'importe, madame; c'est bien mal à vous. ² Elle frappe ^a Marat au flanc gauche, et enfonce ^a le fer jusqu'au cœur. À moi! s'écria-t-il. ³ Mon plus long séjour fut au Pérou. ⁴ Le bœuf était absolument inconnu dans l'Amérique méridionale. ⁵ Vous parlez en soldat; je dois agir en roi. ⁶ Lorsqu'il était jeune, et qu'il faisait des vers, Rousseau n'était guère poète. ⁷ C'était la division qui se trouvait le plus en danger, parcequ'elle était placée près du Danube, et que, pour ce motif, l'ennemi voulait l'accabler. ⁸ Vous le feriez officier de la Légion d'honneur qu'il ne serait pas plus superbe. ⁹ Marque-moi cet endroit, que je le lise mieux.

8. SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

¹ Dorante et moi, nous sommes destinés l'un à l'autre. ² Hélas, non; nous serons tous tristes, vous, moi, les magistrats, et le public. ³ C'est heureux que ni toi ni moi n'ayons ^b pris le mal de ce pauvre frère. ⁴ Ce n'est pas un petit objet que deux cent mille francs. ⁵ C'est un excellent meuble qu'un fauteuil. ⁶ Ah! les sottes gens que nos gens! ⁷ Danser et chanter, c'est gai, sans doute. ⁸ La commerce, c'est la vie de la nation. ⁹ Peut-être mes efforts n'ont-ils pas été tout-à-fait vains. ¹⁰ Le bruit de ses souliers fit lever la tête à la petite fille. ¹¹ Il dit qu'il a vu faire des

actions héroïques au chevalier de Grignan. ¹² Des paroles singulières qu'on lui a entendu dire sur la religion, sur la cour de Rome, nous ont été répétées. ¹³ Il faut s'attendre aux censures du monde quand on ne veut pas suivre ses exemples. ¹⁴ Elle ne peut, au souper, toucher à rien du tout. ¹⁵ J'aidai au Rhodien confus à se relever. ¹⁶ De votre injuste haine il n'a point hérité. ¹⁷ Apollon jouait de la flûte, et tous les autres bergers venaient écouter ses chansons.

9. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

¹ Comme j'achevais la quatrième ligne, je lève vaguement les yeux, et j'aperçois de l'autre côté du fossé un ours qui me regardait fixement. ² Étendu, sans force, au pied d'un arbre, Bayard, en face de la mort, reste calme comme toujours. ³ Il y a longtemps que je rêve d'un officier qui me sauve la vie. ⁴ Quand je revins à moi, il faisait ^a jour. ⁵ Charles XII. avait onze ans lorsqu'il perdit sa mère. ⁶ Les anciens Égyptiens embaumaient leurs morts, ^b les Grecs et les Romains les brûlaient. ⁷ On embauma le corps d'Alexandre, et on le transporta en Égypte. ⁸ Elles duraient depuis plus de dix ans, sans qu'il eût pu ^c les changer. ⁹ Pensez ; depuis quarante ans il était là à la même place. ¹⁰ J'ai su que vous étiez l'un des meilleurs amis de ce pauvre garçon. ¹¹ Il a tracé d'elle, le jour de sa mort, une esquisse fidèle. ¹² Ma chère, m'a-t-il dit, j'ai failli être tué. ¹³ Mon père, me pardonnera, dès qu'il vous aura vue. ^d ¹⁴ Si mon fils le rencontre, il lui fera tout le bien qu'il pourra.

10. SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

¹ Dieu soit béni ! vous voilà vivant. ² Plût aux dieux que ce fût le dernier de ses crimes ! ³ Eût-il

^a 228, 6, a. ^b 113. ^c 272, b. ^d 132, a.

été bien plus fort et bien plus habile, il fût tombé de même. ⁴ Cela ne m'étonne pas, dit-il, qu'il soit mort. ⁵ Il faudrait que vous vinssiez vous-même proposer ce mariage à mon père. ⁶ Il semble que l'on ne puisse rire que des choses ridicules. ⁷ Il paraît que décidément je suis un homme de génie. ⁸ Nous verrons, répondit M. Auvray; attends que la fièvre soit passée. ⁹ Condé et Turenne voulaient qu'on démolît la plupart des places hollandaises. ¹⁰ Je suppose que les hommes soient éternels sur la terre. ¹¹ Nous avons peur que tu n'aies pas tout dit à madame. ¹² Il n'y a que le bon Dieu qui puisse gouverner les choses et les hommes. ¹³ Il n'y a guère de défauts qui ne soient plus pardonnables que les moyens dont on se sert pour les cacher. ¹⁴ On envoya chercher un carrosse de louage, le plus beau qui fût dans toute la ville. ¹⁵ Elle me restera fidèle jusqu'à ce que je puisse l'épouser. ¹⁶ Ils l'aiderent à poser sa tête sur le billot, sans qu'elle cessât de prier. ¹⁷ Quelque rare que soit le véritable amour, il l'est ^a moins que la véritable amitié. ¹⁸ Monsieur, il faut me dire votre nom, afin que je sache à qui je parle. ¹⁹ Je ne me serais pas consolé si monsieur le comte eût succombé. ²⁰ Feignons de sortir, afin qu'il m'arrête. ²¹ Allons, Fanchette; dis donc adieu à Marguerite. ²² Va, le mal n'est pas grand; consolons-nous.

11. INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

¹ Ne me fais plus rougir d'entendre tes soupirs. ² Je te plains de tomber dans ses mains redoutables. ³ Votre père souffre de vous voir en proie à un si violent désespoir. ⁴ Il n'eût point pardonné à son frère d'être venu voir la Fadette et non pas lui. ⁵ Elle l'amena doucement à parler de son fils. ⁶ Il voulait accoutumer aussi ses Moscovites à ne pas connaître de saison. ⁷ Qui pardonne aisément invite à l'offen-

ser. ⁸ Deux hommes si adroits n'ont rien à gagner à se tromper l'un l'autre.^a ⁹ On apporte à manger; on sert un déjeuner fort propre. ¹⁰ Mais elle va à ravir, continua-t-elle; on la croirait faite pour madame la princesse. ¹¹ Il est homme^b à profiter de cette faveur. ¹² Vous n'étiez pas jeune quand vous avez commencé à regner. ¹³ J'avais commencé d'écrire, et je m'arrêtai. ¹⁴ Son conseil ne laissait pas d'être bon à suivre. ¹⁵ Va, ne me laisse pas un héros à venger. ¹⁶ Attendre est impossible, agir ne l'est pas moins. ¹⁷ Oh, doucement, s'aimer,^c c'est une autre affaire. ¹⁸ Plutôt souffrir que mourir, c'est la devise des hommes. ¹⁹ Il n'y a pour l'homme que trois événements: naître, vivre, et mourir. ²⁰ Il aimait mieux ne rien faire que de travailler. ²¹ Viens voir mourir ta sœur dans les bras de ton père. ²² Je ne peux pas vous donner cent mille francs, mais je m'en vais manger votre dîner. ²³ Mais croyez-vous avoir tué tous les Marats? ²⁴ Chacun dans ce miroir pense voir son image. ²⁵ Il disait venir du fond de la Bohême. ²⁶ Quoi? condamner la victime, et épargner l'assassin? ²⁷ Défendez-vous, Horace!—À quoi bon me défendre? ²⁸ Tous deux partent, Germain rêvant à sa défunte^d plus qu'à sa future, et Marie pleurant de quitter sa mère. ²⁹ On ne voyait de tous côtés que des femmes tremblantes, qui se retiraient dans la ville. ³⁰ Voilà l'orage qui vient. ³¹ Quatre cents blessés russes sont restés sur le champ de bataille. ³² Les cavaliers qui sont tombés sous vos coups se sont attiré eux-mêmes ce malheur. ³³ Je regrette les nombreuses années que j'ai vécu sans pouvoir m'instruire. ³⁴ Tout le monde m'a offert des services, et personne ne m'en a rendu. ³⁵ Les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait^e cet été ont beaucoup nui à la récolte.

^a 180. ^b 82, b. ^c 221. ^d 113. ^e 228, 6, a.

VOCABULARIES.

I. FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

à <i>prep.</i> (248c) to, toward, into; at, in; of, with (94); on, by, from; belonging to (197).	aller <i>v.</i> (<i>irreg.</i> 3) go, be going; fit, suit (228, 1.): s'en aller <i>impers.</i> go off or away.
abord, d'abord <i>adv.</i> first, at first.	alors <i>adv.</i> then.
absolument <i>adv.</i> absolutely.	ambitieux <i>adj.</i> ambitious.
abuser (de) <i>v.</i> abuse, impose upon.	amener <i>v.</i> lead, induce.
accabler <i>v.</i> overwhelm.	Amérique <i>f.</i> America.
accoutumer <i>v.</i> accustom.	amertume <i>f.</i> bitterness.
acheter <i>v.</i> buy.	ami <i>m.</i> amie <i>f.</i> friend.
achever <i>v.</i> finish.	amitié <i>f.</i> friendship.
action <i>f.</i> action, deed.	amour <i>m.</i> love.
adieu <i>m.</i> farewell, good-by.	amuser <i>v.</i> amuse, entertain.
admirablement <i>adv.</i> admirably.	an <i>m.</i> year.
adroit <i>adj.</i> adroit, skillful.	ancien <i>adj.</i> ancient; former.
affaire <i>f.</i> business.	Angleterre <i>f.</i> England.
afin que <i>conj.</i> in order that.	année <i>f.</i> year.
âgé <i>adj.</i> aged. old.	apercevoir <i>v.</i> (<i>irreg.</i> 52) perceive.
agir <i>v.</i> act, behave; s'agir de, <i>impers.</i> concern, be question of.	Apollon, Apollo.
aider <i>v.</i> aid, help: aider à. give help to or about.	appeler <i>v.</i> call.
aïeul (<i>pl.</i> aïeux or aïeuls) <i>m.</i> grandfather, ancestor.	apporter <i>v.</i> bring.
aimer <i>v.</i> love, like.	apprendre <i>v.</i> (<i>irreg.</i> 50) teach, learn.
ainsi <i>adv.</i> thus, so: ainsi que, as, so as, as well as.	approcher <i>v.</i> bring near: s' . . . de, draw near, approach.
aisé <i>adj.</i> easy.	après <i>prep.</i> after.
aisément <i>adv.</i> easily.	arbre <i>m.</i> tree.
Alexandre, Alexander.	Ardasire, woman's name.
	argent <i>m.</i> silver, money.
	armée <i>f.</i> army.
	arrêter <i>v.</i> stop.
	art <i>m.</i> art.

- assassin** *m.* assassin.
assez *adv.* enough.
attacher *v.* tie, attach.
attendre *v.* wait for, await:
 s' . . . à, await, expect.
attention *f.* attention.
attirer *v.* draw, attract: *s' . . .*,
 bring upon one's self, incur.
au, aux = *à le, à les*.
aucun *pron.* (*with ne before*
 verb) no, not any.
aujourd'hui *adv.* to-day.
aussi *adv.* also, too: *. . . bien*
 que, as well as.
autant *adv.* as much *or* many:
 . . . que, as much as.
auteur *m.* author.
autre *pron.* other (180).
avant *prep.* before (in time):
 . . . que, . . . de, conj. before.
avec *prep.* with.
aveugle *adj.* blind.
avoir *v.* have (186): *y avoir*
 impers. there is, etc. (225).
avril *m.* April.

bal *m.* ball.
bas *adv.* low.
bataille *f.* battle.
bâter *v.* build.
battre *v.* beat, strike: *se . . .*,
 fight.
beau, bel *adj.* (107) beautiful,
 handsome.
beaucoup *adv.* much.
bel. *see beau*.
belle sœur *f.* sister-in-law.
bénir *v.* bless.
berger *m.* shepherd.
besoin *m.* need, want: *avoir*
 . . . de, need, want (196).
bien *adv.* well, very.
bien *m.* goods, property.
bientôt *adv.* soon.
billot *m.* block.
blanc *adj.* (106*b*) white.
blessé *v.* wound.
- bœuf** *m.* ox.
Bohême *f.* Bohemia.
boire *v.* (*irreg.* 6) drink.
bois *m.* wood.
bon *adj.* good.
bonté *f.* goodness, kindness.
bouche *f.* mouth.
bourreau *m.* executioner, tor-
 mentor.
bras *m.* arm.
brebis *f.* sheep.
bruit *m.* noise.
brûler *v.* burn.

caché *v.* hide.
calme *adj.* still, calm.
canon *m.* cannon: **poudre à**
 . . . gunpowder.
capable *adj.* capable.
capitaine *m.* captain.
capital *m.* capital.
caractère *m.* character.
cardinal *m.* cardinal.
carrosse *m.* coach, carriage.
cavalier *m.* horseman, cav-
 alier, knight.
ce, cet, cette *pron.* (153-6) this,
 that; it.
ceci *pron.* this.
céder *v.* yield, cede.
cela *pron.* that.
celui, celle (158). that, he who.
censure *f.* censure, blame.
cent *num.* (121*b*) hundred.
certain *adv.* truly, certainly.
César, Cæsar.
cesser *f.* cease: *sans . . .*, with-
 out ceasing.
cesser *v.* stop, cease.
cet, cette, *see ce*.
chacun *pron.* each, each one.
chaise *f.* chair.
chaleur, f. warmth, heat.
chambre *f.* room.
champ *m.* field.
changer *v.* change, alter: *. . .*
 de, make a change in.

chanson *m.* song.
 chanter *v.* sing.
 chapeau *m.* hat.
 chaque *pron.* (182*b*) each, every.
 charmer *v.* charm, delight.
 chasser *v.* chase, hunt; drive out, expel.
 chaud *adj.* warm: avoir . . . , be warm (196).
 chef *m.* chief, master: . . . d'œuvre, masterpiece.
 chemin *m.* road.
 cher *adj.* dear, expensive (112*c*).
 chercher *v.* seek, look for, try.
 chérir *v.* cherish.
 cheval *m.* horse.
 chevalier *m.* chevalier, knight.
 chez *prep.* at the house or home of, with.
 choisir *v.* choose.
 chose *f.* thing: grand' . . . , anything important.
 chrétien *adj.* Christian.
 cinq *num.* five.
 citoyen *m.* citizen.
 clémence *f.* clemency.
 cœur *m.* heart.
 colère *f.* anger.
 collègue *m.* colleague.
 combien *adv.* how much.
 comme *adv.* as, how.
 commencer *v.* begin, commence.
 commentaire *m.* commentary.
 commerce *m.* commerce, trade.
 commune *f.* parish, village.
 comprendre *v.* (*irreg.* 50) understand.
 comte *m.* count.
 condamner *v.* condemn.
 Condé, prince of Condé (a famous French general).
 condition *f.* condition, station in life.
 conduire *v.* (*irreg.* 12) conduct, lead.
 confiance *f.* trust, confidence.
 confidence *f.* confidence, secret.

confus *adj.* confused, embarrassed.
 connaître *v.* (*irreg.* 43) be acquainted with, know.
 conseil *m.* counsel, advice.
 sentir *v.* (*irreg.* 44) consent.
 considérer *v.* consider, esteem.
 consoler *v.* console.
 constamment *adv.* constantly.
 constant *adj.* constant.
 constitutionnel *adj.* constitutional.
 contemporaine *adj.* contemporary.
 continuer *v.* continue.
 coquin *m.* coquine *f.* rascal, scamp.
 corrompu *adj.* corrupt.
 côté *m.* side. part: de tous côtés, on all sides; du . . . de, toward, in the direction of.
 coucher *v.* lay down, put to bed: se . . . , go to bed.
 coup *m.* blow: tout-à-coup *adv.* all at once, suddenly.
 coupable *adj.* guilty.
 cour *f.* court.
 couronne *f.* crown.
 cousin *m.* cousine *f.* cousin.
 couvrir *v.* (*irreg.* 16) cover.
 craindre *v.* (*irreg.* 17) fear.
 crayon *m.* pencil.
 créancier *m.* -cière *f.* creditor.
 cri *m.* cry.
 crime *m.* crime.
 cruel *adj.* cruel.
 croire *v.* (*irreg.* 18) believe (228, 2).
 dame *f.* lady.
 Danemark *m.* Denmark.
 danger *m.* danger.
 dangereux *adj.* dangerous.
 dans *prep.* in, into, to (250).
 danser *v.* dance.
 Danube *m.* the Danube.

- de prep.* (87-100, 114, 248) of; from; about; out of, on account of, for; with, by, through; at, on; to (278); than (125).
déception f. deception.
décidément adv. decidedly.
déclarer v. declare, announce.
décourager v. discourage.
défaut m. defect, fault.
défendre m. ward off, keep away; forbid, prohibit; defend, protect.
défunt adj. defunct, dead.
dégout m. dislike, aversion, vexation.
déjà adv. already.
déjeuner v. breakfast.
déjeuner m. breakfast.
demain adv. to-morrow.
demi adj. (129*a*) half.
démolir v. demolish.
depuis prep. from, since: . . .
que conj. since.
dernier adj. last.
des = de les.
dès que conj. as soon as.
désastre m. disaster.
désespoir m. despair.
désormais adv. henceforward.
destiner v. destine.
deux num. two.
devant prep. before (in place).
développer v. unfold, develop.
devenir v. (*irreg.* 62) become: ce qu'il devient, *etc.*, what has become of him, *etc.*
devise f. motto.
devoir v. (*irreg.* 22) owe, ought, be obliged (228, 3).
devoir m. duty.
dévot adj. devout, pious.
Dieu m. God.
différent adj. different.
digne adj. worthy.
dîner v. dine.
dîner m. dinner.
diplomate m. diplomatist.
dire v. (*irreg.* 23) say, tell.
division f. division.
dix num. ten.
donc adv. then, therefore.
donner v. give.
dont pron. (172) of which, of whom.
Dorante, a man's name.
doucement adv. softly.
douleur f. pain, grief.
doute m. doubt.
douter v. doubt, question (about, *de*): *se . . . de*, suspect.
droit m. right.
drôle adj. queer, odd.
du = de le.
durer v. endure, last.
échapper, s' . . . v. escape (*à*, from).
école f. school.
écouter v. listen.
écrier, s' . . . v. cry out, exclaim.
écrire v. (*irreg.* 25) write.
effort m. effort.
église f. church.
Égypte f. Egypt.
égyptien adj. Egyptian.
élever v. raise, educate: *s' . . .*, rise.
elle pron. she.
embaumer v. embalm.
empire m. empire.
emprunter v. borrow (from, *à*).
en prep. (250) in, into, to; as a.
en pron. (143) of it, of them; some, any.
encore adv. still, again; more.
endroit m. spot, place.
enfant m. or f. child.
enfoncer v. sink, plunge.
ennemi m. enemy.
ennuyer v. weary, bore: *s' . . .*, be wearied or bored.

- ennuyeux *adj.* tiresome, stupid.
 énorme *adj.* enormous.
 ensuite *adv.* in the next place,
 afterward, then.
 entendre *v.* hear.
 entier *adj.* entire.
 envers *prep.* toward.
 environ *adv. prep.* about, near-
 ly, not far from.
 envoyer *v. (irreg. 26)* send.
 épargner *v.* spare.
 épouser *v.* marry.
 éprouver *v.* try, experience.
 erreur *f.* error, mistake.
 esprit *m.* spirit; mind, intel-
 lect; wit, brightness.
 esquisse *f.* sketch.
 et *conj.* and.
 état *m.* state, condition in life;
 State, country.
 été *m.* summer.
 étendre *v.* extend, stretch out.
 éternel *adj.* eternal.
 étonner *v.* astonish: s' . . . , be
 astonished.
 être *v. (194)* be ; *as auxil.* have
 (195) ; . . . â, belong to (197).
 étroit *adj.* narrow.
 Europe *f.* Europe.
 eux *pron.* them.
 événement *m.* event.
 excellent *adj.* excellent.
 excuser *v.* excuse.
 exemple *m.* example.
 exercer *v.* exercise.
 exercice *m.* exercise.
 expédition *f.* expedition.
 extraordinaire *adj.* extraordi-
 nary.
 face *f.* face, front: en . . . de,
 in front of, before.
 Fadette, name of a girl.
 faillir *v. (irreg. 27)* fail, come
 short; just miss of (228, 5).
 faim *f.* hunger, famine: avoir . . . ,
 . . . , be hungry (196).
 faire *v. (irreg. 28)* do, make,
 cause ; be (228, 6).
 falloir *v. (irreg. 29) impers.*
 be obliged, must, have to ;
 need, want (228, 7).
 fameux *adj.* famous.
 famille *f.* family.
 famine *f.* famine.
 Fanchette, girl's name.
 faute *f.* deficiency, fault.
 fauteuil *m.* arm-chair.
 faveur *f.* favor.
 feindre *v. (irreg. 45)* feign, make
 believe.
 femme *f.* woman, wife.
 féodal *adj.* feudal.
 fer *m.* iron.
 fermeté *f.* firmness, strength.
 feu *m.* fire.
 fidèle *adj.* faithful, true, exact.
 fièvre *f.* fever.
 fille *f.* girl, daughter.
 fils *m.* son.
 fixement *adv.* fixedly.
 flanc *m.* flank, side.
 fleur *f.* flower.
 flûte *f.* flute.
 foi *f.* faith, belief.
 fond *m.* bottom, base, depth.
 fonder *v.* found, establish.
 force *f.* force: à . . . de, by
 means of, by dint of.
 forêt *m.* forest.
 fort *adj.* strong ; *adv.* strongly,
 greatly, much, very.
 fortune *f.* fortune, luck.
 fossé *m.* ditch, trench.
 foudre *f.* thunderbolt.
 franc *m.* franc (a French coin
 worth about 20 cents).
 France *f.* France.
 franchement *adv.* frankly.
 frapper *v.* strike, knock.
 frère *m.* brother.
 froid *adj.* cool, cold: avoir . . . ,
 be cold (196).
 fruit *m.* fruit.

fuir *v.* (*irreg.* 31) flee ; fly from,
shun.

futur *adj.* future.

gai *adj.* gay.

gagner *v.* gain, win, earn.

gant *m.* glove.

garçon *m.* boy ; bachelor.

garnison *m.* garrison.

gâteau *m.* cake.

gauche *adj.* left hand ; awkward.

geler *v. impers.* freeze.

génie *m.* genius.

gens *f. pl.* folks, people, persons ; servants.

Germain, man's name.

gouverner *v.* govern.

grand *adj.* great, large, tall :

grand'chose, anything great,
matter of importance.

grec *adj.* Greek, Grecian.

gronder *v.* scold.

gros *adj.* big, stout, large.

guère, ne . . . guère *adv.* (244),
hardly, scarcely, but little.

guerre *f.* war.

Guillaume, William.

habile *adj.* able, skillful.

habitant *m.* inhabitant.

'haine *f.* hate, hatred.

'haïr *v.* (208) hate, dislike.

'haut *adj.* high, tall.

hélas *interj.* alas !

hériter *v.* inherit.

héritier *m.* héritière *f.* heir,
heiress.

héroïque *adj.* heroic.

'héros *m.* hero.

heure *f.* hour ; time of day,
o'clock (123*b*).

heureux *adj.* happy, fortunate.

hier *adv.* yesterday.

histoire *f.* history ; story.

'hollandais *adj.* of Holland,
Dutch.

'Hollande *f.* Holland.

homme *m.* man.

honneur *f.* honor.

'honte *f.* shame : avoir . . . , be
ashamed (196).

horreur *f.* horror.

huile *f.* oil.

'huit *num.* eight.

hypocrite *m.* hypocrite.

ici *adv.* here.

idée *f.* idea.

il, ils *pron.* he, it, they ; it
(156*c*, 222).

image *m.* image, likeness.

importer *v.* be of importance,
matter, signify : n'importe,
no matter, never mind
(243*c*).

impossible *adj.* impossible.

imprimer *v.* print ; impress, im-
part, give.

inconnu *adj.* unknown.

indigne *adj.* unworthy.

industrie *f.* industry ; trade,
business.

informer *v.* inform : s' . . . , get
information, ask, inquire.

injuste *adj.* unjust.

insensé *adj.* mad, insane, fool-
ish.

insolent *adj.* insolent, imperti-
nent.

instant *m.* instant.

instruire *v.* (*irreg.* 12) instruct.

inutile *adj.* useless.

inviter *v.* invite.

Jacques, James.

jamais *adv.* never : ne . . . ja-
mais, never (244).

jardin *m.* garden.

Jeanne, Jane.

jeune *adj.* young.

joli *adj.* pretty.

jouer *v.* play (upon, *de*).

journal *m.* newspaper.

journée *f.* day.

juillet *m.* July.

juin *m.* June.

jusqu'à *prep.* to, until, as far as:
jusqu'à ce que *conj.* until.

juste *adj.* just, righteous.

la *art. and pron.* the ; her, it.

là *adv.* there (158): de là,
thence.

là-bas *adv.* down there, over
there, yonder.

lâche *adj.* slothful, cowardly,
base: *as noun*, coward, das-
tard.

laisser *v.* leave, quit, abandon;
let, leave, allow, cause; leave
off (from, de), omit, fail.

Landry, man's name.

langue *f.* tongue ; language,
speech.

le *pron. and art.* he, it ; the.

légion *f.* legion.

lequel *pron.* (164) which one,
who, that.

lettre *f.* letter.

leur *pron.* to them ; their.

lever *v.* raise, lift up: se . . . ,
rise, get up.

lèvre *f.* lip.

liberté *f.* liberty.

lieu *m.* place, spot: avoir . . . ,
take place; au . . . de, instead
of.

ligne *f.* line.

limité *adj.* limited.

lire *v.* (*irreg.* 34) read.

lit *m.* bed.

livre *m.* book.

livre *f.* pound.

loi *f.* law.

long *adj.* long.

longtemps *adv.* a long time or
while.

lorsque *conj.* when.

louage *m.* hire, letting out: de
. . . , on hire.

louer *v.* praise.

lui *pron.* him ; to him or her.

M. *abbreviation of Monsieur,*
equivalent to our Mr.

madame (mesdames *plur.*) *f.* my
lady, the lady, madam.

magistrat *m.* magistrate.

mai *m.* May.

main *f.* hand.

maintenant *adv.* now.

mais *conj.* but.

maison *f.* house: à la . . . , at
home.

maître *m.* master, teacher.

mal *adv.* badly, ill.

mal *m.* evil, ill, harm, pain,
disease (94a).

malade *adj.* sick, ill.

malheur *f.* unhappiness, mis-
fortune.

malheureux *adj.* unfortunate,
unhappy.

malheureusement *adv.* unfor-
tunately.

manger *v.* eat.

manière *f.* manner, way, meth-
od.

manquer *v.* be wanting or de-
ficient (in, de); lack ; fail.

Marat, a famous French revo-
lutionist.

mardi *m.* Tuesday.

mariage *m.* marriage.

Marie, Mary.

Marguerite, Margaret.

marier *v.* give in marriage:
se . . . , marry.

marquer *v.* mark, designate.

marquis *m.* marquis.

matin *m.* morning.

mauvais *adj.* bad.

Mazarin, a French cardinal.

me *pron.* me, to me.

méchant *adj.* wicked, bad; mis-
chievous, naughty.

mécontent *adj.* discontented.

- meilleur** *adj.* better.
même *adj.* (140c) self, -self ; self-same, same, very: *as adv.* even: *de . . .*, in the same way.
mémoire *f.* memory, recollection.
mener *v.* lead, conduct, take.
merci *m.* thanks: *absolutely*, thank you.
mère *f.* mother.
méridional *adj.* southern.
mérite *f.* merit.
mériter *v.* merit, deserve.
mettre *v.* (*irreg.* 36) put, place, set; *se . . . à*, set one's self at, begin.
meuble *m.* furniture, piece of furniture.
midi *m.* midday, noon, twelve o'clock.
mien *adj.* mine.
mieux *adv.* better.
mil, mille *num.* thousand.
million *m.* million.
minute *f.* minute, moment.
miroir *m.* mirror.
mœurs *f. pl.* manners, morals, habits.
moi *pron.* me, to me, I.
moins *adv.* less: *du . . .*, *au . . .*, at least: *à . . . que*, unless.
mois *m.* month.
mon, ma, mes *pron.* my.
monde *m.* world; *tout le . . .*, everyone.
monsieur (*pl.* *messieurs*) *m.* the gentleman, sir, Mr.
monter *v.* mount, climb, rise.
moquer *v.* mock: *se . . . de*, ridicule, mock at.
morceau *m.* bit, morsel, small piece, extract.
mort *f.* death.
mort *adj.* dead.
moscovite *adj.* of Moscow.
motif *m.* motive, cause, reason.
mourir *v.* (*irreg.* 38) die.
moyen *m.* means, way.
naître *v.* (*irreg.* 40) be born (228, 8).
nation *f.* nation.
ne *adv.* (241-47) not.
neiger *v. impers.* snow.
netteté *f.* neatness, clearness.
neuf *adj.* new.
neuf *num.* nine.
nez *m.* nose.
ni *adv.* (244d) neither, nor.
noblesse *f.* nobility.
noir *adj.* black.
nom *m.* name.
nombreux *adj.* numerous.
nommer *v.* name, appoint.
non *adv.* (246) not; no: **non plus**, not any more, neither.
notre *pron.* our.
nôtre *pron.* ours.
nous *pron.* we, us.
nouveau, nouvel *adj.* new.
nuire *v.* (*irreg.* 41) harm, injure, do hurt (to, à).
nuit *f.* night.
nul *pron.* (244d) not any, none, no; no one.
nullement *adv.* not at all, in no wise.
obéir *v.* be obedient (to, à), obey.
obéissant *adj.* obedient.
objet *m.* object.
occuper *v.* occupy: *s' . . .*, occupy one's self, be busy (with, de); spend one's time (upon, de).
œil (yeux pl.) *m.* eye.
offenser *v.* offend.
officier *m.* officer.
offrir *v.* (*irreg.* 16) offer, present.
on *pron.* (178) one, they
oncle *m.* uncle.

onze *num.* eleven.
 or *m.* gold.
 orage *m.* storm, tempest.
 ordinairement *adv.* ordinarily.
 ordonner *v.* order.
 oreille *f.* ear.
 organizer *v.* organize.
 ou *conj.* or.
 où *adv. and pron.* (173) where?
 where; to or at or in which.
 oublier *v.* forget.
 oui *adv.* yes.
 ours *m.* bear.
 ouvrage *m.* work, labor.

pain *m.* bread.
 papier *m.* paper.
 par *prep.* by.
 paraître *v.* (*irreg.* 43) appear,
 seem.
 parc *m.* park.
 parceque *conj.* because.
 parcourir *v.* (*irreg.* 15) run
 through or over, traverse,
 pass through.
 pardonnable *adj.* pardonable.
 pardonner *v.* pardon, forgive.
 paresseux *adj.* lazy.
 parler *v.* speak, talk.
 parole *f.* word; speech, lan-
 guage.
 part *f.* part, portion, share: de
 ma . . . , on my part or my
 behalf, from me.
 partie *f.* part, portion, share.
 partir *v.* (*irreg.* 44) set out, start,
 go away, leave.
 partout *adv.* everywhere.
 pas *m.* step.
 pas *adv.* (*with ne*) not (241):
 pas du tout, not at all.
 passer *v.* pass, go on or through,
 spend: se . . . , *impers.* take
 place, happen; se . . . de,
 dispense with, go without.
 pauvre *adj.* poor.
 pays *m.* country.

peine *f.* pain, grief: à . . . , with
 difficulty, hardly.
 peinture *f.* painting.
 pendant *prep.* during: . . . que
 conj. while.
 perdre *v.* lose.
 père *m.* father.
 perfide *adj.* perfidious.
 Pérou *m.* Peru.
 persan *adj.* Persian.
 personne *f.* person, individual;
 with ne (244), no one, no-
 body.
 petit *adj.* little, small.
 peu *adv.* (*or as noun, m.*) little,
 not much, not very.
 peuple *m.* people, nation.
 peur *f.* fear: avoir . . . , be
 afraid (196).
 peut-être *adv.* may be, per-
 haps.
 pied *m.* foot.
 pire *adj.* worse.
 place *f.* place.
 placer *v.* place, set.
 plaindre *v.* (*irreg.* 17) weep
 over, lament, pity: se . . . ,
 complain, lament.
 plainte *f.* plaint, cry of pain,
 groan.
 plaire *v.* (*irreg.* 46) please.
 pleurer *v.* weep, lament.
 plonger *v.* plunge.
 plupart *f.* greater part: la plu-
 part de, most of, most.
 plus *adv.* more; the more; *with*
 ne (244), no longer, not fur-
 ther, no more: plus . . . plus . . . ,
 the more . . . the more . . .
 plutôt *adv.* sooner, rather.
 poète *m.* poet.
 point *m.* point, dot; *with ne*
 (241), not, not at all.
 Pologne, *f.* Poland.
 Pompéïes, Pompeii.
 port *m.* harbor, port.
 poser *v.* pose, place.

possible *adj.* possible.
 poste *f.* post, post-office.
 poudre *f.* powder.
 pour *prep.* for, on account of
 in order to, to: pour que, in
 order that.
 pourquoi *adv. and conj.* why,
 for what.
 pourtant *adv.* for all that, yet,
 nevertheless.
 pouvoir *v.* (*irreg.* 49) be able,
 can; may, might (228, 10).
 prendre *v.* (*irreg.* 50) take.
 près *adv. and prep.* near, next:
 ... de, near, near by, next
 to.
 préserver *v.* preserve, keep.
 président *m.* president.
 presque *adv.* almost.
 prier *v.* pray, beg, request, ask.
 prince *m.* prince.
 princesse *f.* princess.
 principe *m.* principle.
 prison *f.* prison.
 prochain *adj.* near, next.
 proche *adj.* near (to, de).
 profiter *v.* profit (by, de), take *or*
 get advantage.
 proie *f.* prey: en . . . à, a prey
 to.
 promesse *f.* promise.
 promettre *v.* (*irreg.* 36) promise.
 proposer *v.* propose.
 propre *adj.* own; very; suitable;
 nice, clean.
 prudent *adj.* prudent.
 public *adj.* public.
 puis *adv.* then, next.
 punir *v.* punish.
 quand *adv. and conj.* when; if,
 supposing that.
 quant *pron.* how much: quant
 à, as for.
 quarante *num.* forty.
 quart *m.* quarter.
 quatorze *num.* fourteen.

quatre *num.* four.
 quatre-vingts *num.* fourscore,
 eighty.
 quatrième *num.* fourth.
 que *pron.:* *interrog.* what,
 which; *relat.* which, that,
 whom; *after* qui, quoi, etc.
 (181c) ever: ce que, that
 which, what.
 que *adv.* how, why.
 que *conj.* that; *sign of subjunc-*
 tive (188a); in order that; *re-*
 peating si, lorsque, etc. (257);
 than (118): que . . . ne, unless,
 until (273b); ne . . . que
 (244b), only.
 quel *pron.* what, what a,
 which: quel . . . que (177),
 whatever.
 quelque *pron.* some; about,
 nearly: quelque . . . que (177),
 whatever, however; . . .
 chose, something, anything.
 qui *pron.:* *interrog.* who,
 whom, what; *relat.* who,
 whom, that, which; who-
 ever; qui que, whoever (177).
 quinze *num.* fifteen.
 quitter *v.* quit, leave.
 quoi *pron.:* *interrog.* what; *rel.*
 what, which; *exclam.* (163)
 what! quoi que (177), what-
 ever; de quoi, wherewith,
 the means (171).
 quoique *conj.* (272a) though,
 although.
 raconter *v.* tell, relate.
 raison *f.* reason, sense, motive:
 avoir . . . (196), be right.
 rare *adj.* rare, unusual.
 ravir *v.* ravish, delight, charm.
 réalité *f.* reality.
 recevoir *v.* (*irreg.* 52) receive.
 récolte *f.* harvest, crop.
 redoutable *adj.* redoubtable,
 formidable.

- regarder *v.* look, regard, see ; have regard to. concern.
 régner *v.* reign, rule.
 regretter *v.* regret.
 reine *f.* queen.
 réjouir *v.* gladden, cheer: *se* . . . , rejoice, be delighted.
 relever *v.* raise up again, lift up.
 religion *f.* religion.
 rencontrer *v.* meet, fall in with.
 rendre *v.* render, return, give back ; make, cause to be : . . . service, do a service.
 renverser *v.* overthrow, overturn.
 renvoyer *v.* (*irreg.* 26) send back, return.
 répéter *v.* repeat.
 répondre *v.* respond, reply.
 reposer *v.* repose, rest: *se* . . . , take rest, rest.
 rester *v.* remain, stay, continue.
 retirer *v.* draw back: *se* . . . , withdraw, retreat.
 réussir *v.* succeed (in, à).
 revenir *v.* (*irreg.* 62) return.
 rêver *v.* dream.
 rhodien *adj.* of Rhodes.
 riche *adj.* rich.
 Richelieu, a prime minister of France.
 ridicule *adj.* ridiculous.
 ridicule *m.* absurdity.
 rien *pron.* (*with ne* 244) nothing, not anything: . . . du tout, nothing at all.
 rire *v.* (*irreg.* 54), laugh.
 robe *f.* robe, dress.
 roi *m.* king.
 romain *adj.* Roman.
 roman *m.* romance, novel.
 rose *f.* rose.
 rouge *adj.* red.
 rougir *v.* turn red, blush.
 Rousseau, French author.
 royaliste *adj.* royalist, of the king's party.
 royaume *m.* kingdom.
 ruine *f.* ruin.
 russe *adj.* Russian.
 sage *adj.* sage, wise; well-behaved.
 saison *f.* season, time of year.
 saluer *v.* salute, greet, bow to.
 sans *prep.* without: . . . que, without, unless (272*b*).
 sauver *v.* save.
 savoir *v.* (*irreg.* 55) know, know as, know to be; know how (228, 11).
 scélérat *m.* villain, scoundrel.
 se *pron.* (142, 216*a*, 221) him-, her- or it-self, themselves.
 seigneur *m.* lord.
 seize *num.* sixteen.
 séjour *m.* sojourn, stay.
 sembler *v.* seem, appear.
 sept *num.* seven.
 service *m.* service.
 servir *v.* (*irreg.* 56) serve; be of use, help ; serve, put on the table: . . . de, serve as ; *se* . . . de, make use of.
 seul *adj.* alone, only.
 seulement *adv.* only.
 si *conj.* if, whether.
 si *adv.* so, as ; yes (232*a*).
 siècle *m.* century, age.
 siège *m.* siege.
 sien *pron.* his, hers, its.
 sincère *adj.* sincere.
 singulier *adj.* singular, peculiar.
 situation *f.* situation.
 six *num.* six.
 société *f.* society.
 sœur *f.* sister.
 soi *pron.* (142) one's self.
 soie *f.* silk.
 soif *f.* thirst: avoir . . . , be thirsty.

soin *m.* care, attention.
 soir *m.* evening.
 soixante *num.* sixty.
 soldat *m.* soldier.
 soleil *m.* sun.
 son, sa, ses *pron.* his, her, its.
 son *m.* sound.
 songer *v.* dream, muse, think (of, à).
 sorte *f.* sort, kind, species : de la sorte, in that way.
 sortir *v.* (*irreg.* 44) come forth, proceed, go out (from, de).
 sot *adj.* foolish, silly, stupid.
 souffrir *v.* (*irreg.* 16) suffer.
 souhaiter *v.* wish, desire
 soulier *m.* shoe.
 souper *m.* supper.
 soupir *m.* sigh.
 soutenir *v.* (*irreg.* 62) sustain, uphold, maintain.
 souvent *adv.* often.
 souvenir *v.* (*irreg.* 62) come to mind : se . . . de, remember, recollect.
 style *m.* style.
 sublime *adj.* sublime.
 succéder *v.* succeed : . . . à, follow.
 succomber *v.* succumb, give way.
 suffire *v.* (*irreg.* 57) suffice, be sufficient.
 suite *f.* what follows, sequel ; train.
 suivre *v.* (*irreg.* 58) follow.
 sujet *adj.* subject, liable.
 superbe *adj.* proud, splendid.
 supposer *v.* suppose.
 sur *prep.* on, upon ; over, above, about.
 sûr *adj.* sure, steady, trustworthy.
 surmonter *v.* surmount, overcome, surpass.
 surprendre *v.* (*irreg.* 50) surprise.

surprise *f.* surprise.
 suspect *adj.* suspected, distrust-
 ed.
 système *m.* system.

table *f.* table.
 tâche *f.* task.
 tant *adv.* so much or many, as much or many.
 tard *adj.* and *adv.* late.
 te *pron.* thee, to thee.
 tel *pron.* such ; such a one, so and so.
 temps *m.* time ; weather.
 tenir *v.* (*irreg.* 62) hold, keep.
 terre *f.* earth.
 terreur *f.* terror.
 tête *f.* head.
 Thèbes *m.* Thebes.
 tien *pron.* thine.
 Toinette, girl's name.
 tolérance *f.* tolerance.
 tomber *v.* fall.
 ton, ta, tes *pron.* thy.
 torpeur *f.* torpor.
 toucher *v.* touch, be close upon, move.
 toujours *adv.* always.
 tout *pron.* (182) all, every ; whole, the whole ; as *adv.* wholly, entirely : . . . le monde, all the world, everybody ; tout-à-fait, entirely ; tout-à-coup, all at once ; tout de suite, immediately.
 tracer *v.* trace, draw.
 transporter *v.* transport, move.
 travail *m.* work, labor.
 travailler *v.* work, labor.
 trembler *v.* tremble.
 très *adv.* very.
 triompher *v.* triumph (over, de), conquer.
 triste *adj.* sad.
 Troie *f.* Troy.
 trois *num.* three.

tromper *v.* deceive, cheat: se . . . , deceive one's self, be mistaken.

trône *m.* throne.

trop *adv.* too much, too many.

trouver *v.* find, discover; find to be, consider, think: se . . . , find one's self, be.

tuer *v.* kill.

Turenne, famous French general.

un, une *num. or art.* one; a, an.

vache *f.* cow.

vaguement *adv.* vaguely.

vain *adj.* vain, useless, idle.

valet *m.* valet, man-servant.

valoir *v.* (*irreg.* 61) be worth, have the value of: . . . mieux, be worth more, be better.

velours *m.* velvet.

vendre *v.* sell.

venger *v.* avenge.

venir *v.* (*irreg.* 62) come, be coming: . . . de, have just (228, 13).

véritable *adj.* veritable, true.

vers *prep.* toward, about.

vers *m.* verse, poetry.

vertu *f.* virtue.

Vésuve *m.* Vesuvius.

veuve *f.* widow.

viande *f.* meat.

vice *m.* vice.

victime *f.* victim.

vie *f.* life.

vieux, vieil *adj.* old, aged.

vingt *num.* twenty.

violent *adj.* violent.

visite *f.* visit, call.

vivre *v.* (*irreg.* 64) live.

voici *interj.* (233) see here, here is, see, behold.

voilà *interj.* (233) see there, there is, see, behold.

voile *f.* veil.

voir *v.* (*irreg.* 65) see.

voix *f.* voice.

volontiers *adv.* voluntarily, with pleasure.

votre *pron.* you.

vôtre *pron.* yours.

vouloir *v.* (*irreg.* 66) (228, 15) wish, will, desire, want; mean, intend: en . . . à, have a grudge against.

vous *pron.* you.

vrai *adj.* true.

y *adv. pron.* there; to it, to them (143b).

yeux *pl. of* œil, eye.

II. ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

a, an, un.	bad, mauvais.
able, be . . . , pouvoir (<i>irreg.</i> 49. 228, 10).	ball, bal <i>m.</i>
abuse, abuser de.	be, être (104-0); <i>of weather</i> , faire (228).
acquainted, be . . . with, connaître (<i>irreg.</i> 43).	beautiful, beau (114).
afraid, be . . . , avoir peur (196).	because, parce que.
after <i>prep.</i> après; <i>conj.</i> après que.	bed, go to . . . , se coucher.
again, encore.	before <i>prep.</i> avant; <i>conj.</i> avant que.
all, tout (182).	believe, croire (<i>irreg.</i> 18).
almost, presque.	big, grand.
alone, seul.	blind, aveugle.
already, déjà.	book, livre <i>m.</i>
also, aussi.	borrow, emprunter (from, à).
although, quoique (272).	boy, garçon <i>m.</i>
always, toujours.	bread, pain <i>m.</i>
and, et.	breakfast <i>v.</i> déjeuner; <i>subst.</i> déjeuner <i>m.</i>
another, un autre (180).	bring, apporter.
any, de <i>with art.</i> (95-7), en (145): anyone, quelqu'un, ne . . . personne (244).	brother, frère <i>m.</i>
appear, paraître (<i>irreg.</i> 43).	build, bâtir.
approach, s'approcher de.	but, mais.
April, avril <i>m.</i>	buy, acheter.
as, aussi: as . . . as, aussi . . . que; as far as, jusqu'à; as for, quant à; as much as, autant que.	by, par, de.
ashamed, be . . . , avoir honte (196).	cake, gâteau <i>m.</i>
astonished, be . . . , s'étonner.	can, pouvoir (<i>irreg.</i> 49).
at, à; en, dans: at the house or home of, chez: at once, tout de suite.	chair, chaise <i>f.</i>
await, attendre.	change, changer.
away, go . . . , s'en aller.	child, enfant, <i>m. or f.</i>
	choose, choisir.
	church, église <i>f.</i>
	city, ville <i>f.</i>
	clean, propre (112).
	cold, froid <i>m.</i> : be . . . , avoir froid (196); be . . . (<i>of the weather</i>), faire froid (228b.)

come, venir (*irreg.* 62. 228, 13):
 . . . near, s'approcher (to,
 de).

constant, constant.
 constantly, constamment.
 country, pays *m.*
 cow, vache *f.*

daughter, fille *f.*
 day, jour *m.*, journée *f.*
 dear, cher (112).
 die, mourir (*irreg.* 38).
 dine, dîner.
 dinner, dîner *m.*
 dint, by . . . of, à force de.
 do, faire (*irreg.* 28).
 dress, robe *f.*
 drive . . . out, chasser.
 during, pendant.

eat, manger.
 either, l'un ou l'autre: either . . .
 or, ou . . . ou; nor . . . either,
 ni . . . non plus (246c).
 England, Angleterre *f.*
 enough, assez (92).
 Europe, Europe *m.*
 expect, attendre.
 expensive, cher (112).
 eye, œil *sing.*, yeux *pl. m.*

family, famille *f.*
 father, père *m.*
 fear, craindre *v.* (*irreg.* 17).
 fetch, chercher.
 field, champ *m.*
 find, trouver.
 finish, finir.
 fire, feu *m.*
 flower, fleur *f.*
 foot, pied *m.*
 for, pour, depuis.
 forbid, défendre.
 forest, forêt *f.*
 forget, oublier.
 fortunately, heureusement.
 franc, franc *m.*

France, France *f.*
 freeze, geler.
 friend, ami *m.*, amie *f.*
 from, de.
 fruit, fruit *m.*

garden, jardin *m.*
 gentleman, monsieur *m.*
 get up, se lever.
 girl, fille *f.*
 give, donner: . . . back, rendre.
 glove, gant *m.*
 go, aller (*irreg.* 3. 228. 1): . . .
 away, s'en aller; . . . to bed,
 se coucher; be going to, aller
 (228. 1).
 God, Dieu *m.*
 good, bon.

half *adj.* demi, demi- (129a):
 half an hour, une demi-
 heure.

hand, main *f.*
 happy, heureux, content.
 hardly, ne . . . guère (244).
 hat, chapeau *m.*
 hate, haïr (208).
 have, avoir (186); *as auxiliary.*
 avoir *or* être (195): have
 done, faire (228. 10).

he, il, lui.
 hear, entendre.
 her *pron.* la, lui, elle (134-40);
 poss. son.

hers, sien.
 here, ici: . . . is, voici.
 high, haut.

his, son, sien.
 history, histoire *f.*
 hold, tenir (*irreg.* 62).
 horse, cheval *m.*

hour, heure *f.*
 house, maison *f.*
 how, comment: how much *or*
 how many, combien, que de
 (163c).
 however, quel . . . que (177).

hungry, be . . . , avoir faim (196).

hunt, chasser.

I, je, moi.

if, si.

ill, malade.

impossible, impossible.

in, en, dans (250), à (249), de (119c) : . . . town, à la ville.

invite, inviter.

it, il, elle ; le, la ; *as indef. subj.*,
il, ce.

July, juillet *m.*

June, juin *m.*

just, have . . . , venir de (228. 13).

king, roi *m.*

kindness, bonté *f.*

kingdom, royaume *m.*

know, savoir (*irreg.* 55). (be acquainted with), connaître (*irreg.* 43).

lady, dame *f.*

large, grand.

lazy, paresseux.

lead, mener.

less, moins.

letter, lettre *f.*

life, vie *f.*

like, aimer, vouloir (228. 15).

little *adj.* petit ; *adv.* peu.

live, vivre (*irreg.* 64).

long, long : no longer. ne . . . plus (244) ; a long time, longtemps.

look, regarder : . . . for, chercher.

lose, perdre.

love, aimer.

madam, madame *f.*

make, faire (*irreg.* 28).

man, homme *m.*

many *adv.* beaucoup : how . . . , combien.

master, maître *m.*

me, moi.

meat, viande *f.*

mine, mien.

minute, minute *f.*

mock. se moquer de.

money, argent *m.*

month, mois *m.*

more *adv.* plus ; no more, ne . . .

plus ; the more . . . the more.

plus . . . plus (244).

most, plus, le plus, *with adjective* (115a).

mother, mère *f.*

much, beaucoup *adv.*

must, falloir (*irreg.* 29).

my, mon, ma, mes.

nation, nation *f.*

naughty, méchant.

near *adj.* prochain ; *prep.* près de.

necessary, be . . . , falloir (*irreg.* 29).

need, falloir (*irreg.* 29).

never, jamais ; *with verb*, ne . . . jamais (244).

new, nouveau.

newspaper, journal *m.*

next, prochain *adj.*

nine *num.* neuf.

no, non ; no longer, ne . . . plus.

nor, ni ; neither . . . nor, ni . . . ni (245).

not, ne . . . pas, ne . . . point

(241) ; not at all, pas du tout.

nothing, rien, ne . . . rien (244).

novel, roman *m.*

now, maintenant.

obey, obéir.

o'clock, heure (123b).

of, de.

often, souvent.
old, vieux, âgé; years old, âgé de.

on, sur.

one, un.

only *adv.* seulement; ne . . . que (244).

or, ou.

order, in . . . that, pour que.

other, autre (180).

ought, devoir (*irreg.* 22),

our, notre.

ours, nôtre.

owe, devoir (*irreg.* 22).

own, propre (112).

paper, papier *m.*

pencil, crayon *m.*

people, peuple *m.*

piece, morceau *m.*

plenty, assez *adv.*

poor, pauvre.

possible, possible.

pretty, joli.

promise, promettre (*irreg.* 36).

punish, punir.

put, put on, mettre (*irreg.* 36).

quarter, quart *m.*: quarter to, moins un quart; quarter past, et un quart (123*b*).

queen, reine *f.*

quickly, vite.

read, lire (*irreg.* 34).

receive, recevoir (*irreg.* 52).

rejoice, se réjouir.

return, come back, revenir (*irreg.* 62); give back, rendre.

rich, riche.

ridicule, se moquer de.

right, be . . ., avoir raison (196).

rise, se lever.

room, chambre *f.*

rose, rose *f.*

say, dire (*irreg.* 23).

school, école *f.*

see, voir (*irreg.* 65).

seek, chercher.

seem, sembler.

sell, vendre.

send, envoyer (*irreg.* 26); . . .

back, renvoyer (26).

she, elle.

sheep, brebis *f.*

sick, malade.

silk, soie *f.*

silver, argent *m.*

since *prep.* depuis; *conj.* depuis que.

sir, monsieur *m.*

sister, sœur *f.*

six, six.

sleepy, be : . ., avoir sommeil (196).

small, petit.

snow, neige.

some, de *with art.* (95-97); en (145); some one, quelqu'un.

something, quelque chose.

son, fils *m.*

soon, bientôt.

speak, parler.

still *adv.* encore.

succeed, réussir.

take, prendre (*irreg.* 50).

talk, parler.

tall, 'haut.

task, tâche *f.*

teacher, maître *m.*

tell, dire (*irreg.* 23).

than, que (118); de (125).

that *pron.* ce, ce . . . là, celui, celui-là, cela; *relat.* qui, que, lequel: all that, tout ce qui *or* que; that which, ce qui *or* que.

the, le, la, les.

their, leur; theirs, le leur.

them, les; to . . ., leur.

- there *adv.* là, y (144*d*) ; . . . is | well, bien.
 or are. il y a (225), voilà | what *adj.* quel ; *subst.* qui, que,
 (233). | quoi (163*b*). ce qui or que
 they, ils, elles. | (175*a*).
 thing, chose *f.* | whatever, quoi . . . que (177).
 think, penser (of, à). | when, quand.
 this, ce, ce . . . ci, celui, celui-ci ; | where, où.
 this or that is, voici, voilà | whether, si (266*b*).
 (233). | which, quel, lequel ; of which,
 thou, tu. | dont (172).
 three, trois. | while, pendant que.
 thy, ton, ta, tes. | white, blanc.
 time, temps *m.* | who, whom, qui, (*relat.*) qui,
 to, à, en ; in order to, pour. | que, lequel ; of whom, dont
 to-day, aujourd'hui | (172).
 to-morrow, demain. | why, pourquoi.
 too, aussi ; . . . much or many, | wife, femme *f.*
 trop. | will, be willing, vouloir (*irreg*
 town, ville *f.* | 66), future of verb.
 two, deux. | wish, vouloir (*irreg.* 66).
 | with, avec.
 uncle, oncle *m.* | without, sans, sans que.
 unfortunately, | woman, femme *f.*
 malheureuse- | wood, bois *m.*
 ment. | wooden, de bois.
 unhappy, malheureux. | work, travailler.
 unless, à moins que. | worse, worst, pire, le pire ; *adv.*
 until, jusqu'à ce que. | pis, le pis.
 us, nous. | write, écrire (*irreg.* 25).
 |
 velvet, velours *m.* | year, an *m.*, année *f.*
 very, très. | yes, oui.
 voice, voix *f.* | yesterday, hier.
 | yet, not . . . , pas encore.
 want, vouloir (*irreg.* 66). | you, vous.
 warm, chaud ; be . . . avoir | young, jeune.
 chaud ; (*of the weather*), faire | your, votre
 chaud (228. 10). | yours, le vôtre.
 we, nous. |

INDEX OF ALL IRREGULAR FRENCH VERBS, SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.


The references are to the numbers in the table of irregular verbs, and refer each verb to the model verb like which it is conjugated.

absoudre	1	circonscrire	25	cueillir	20	dire	23
abstenir	62	circonvenir	62	cuire	12	disconvenir	62
abstraire	60	clore	10			discourir	15
accourir	15	commettre	36	décevoir	52	disjoindre	33
accroire	18	comparaître	43	déchoir	21	disparaître	43
accroître	19	complaire	46	déclore	10	dissoudre	1
accueillir	20	comprendre	50	déconfire	13	distraire	60
acquérir	2	compromettre	36	découdre	14	dormir	24
admettre	36	concevoir	52	découvrir	16	duire	12
advenir	62	conclure	11	décrire	25		
aller	3	concourir	15	déroire	18	ébouillir	7
apercevoir	52	conduire	12	déroître	19	échoir	21
apparaître	43	confire	31	dédire	13	éclore	10
appartenir	62	conjoindre	33	déduire	12	éconduire	12
apprendre	50	connaître	43	défaillir	27	écrire	25
assaillir	4	conquérir	2	défaire	28	élire	34
asseoir	5	consentir	44	déjoindre	33	emboire	6
astreindre	45	construire	12	démentir	44	émettre	36
atteindre	45	contenir	62	démettre	36	émoudre	37
attirer	60	contraindre	17	départir	44	émouvoir	39
avenir	62	contredire	13	dépeindre	45	emprendre	45
avoir	§186	contrefaire	28	déplaire	46	enceindre	45
		contrevenir	62	dépourvoir	48	enclore	10
boire	6	convaincre	§210	désapprendre	50	encourir	15
bouillir	7	convenir	62	desservir	56	endormir	24
braire	60	coudre	14	déteindre	45	enduire	12
bruire	8	courir	15	détenir	62	enfreindre	45
		couvrir	16	détruire	12	enfuir	31
ceindre	45	craindre	17	devenir	62	enjoindre	33
choir	21	croire	18	dévêtir	63	enquérir	2
circoncire	9	croître	19	devoir	22	ensuivre	58

174 INDEX OF ALL IRREGULAR FRENCH VERBS.

entreprendre	50	messeoir	5	ratteindre	45	revenir	62
entretenir	62	mettre	36	reboire	6	revêtir	63
entrevoir	65	moudre	37	rebouillir	7	revivre	64
entr'ouvrir	16	mourir	38	recevoir	52	revoir	65
envoyer	26	mouvoir	39	reclure	11	rire	54
épreindre	45			reconduire	12	rouvrir	16
éprendre	50	naître	40	reconnaître	43		
équivaloir	61	nuire	41	reconquérir	2	satisfaire	28
éteindre	45	obtenir	62	reconstruire	12	savoir	55
être	§194	offrir	16	recoudre	14	secourir	15
étreindre	45	oindre	33	recourir	15	séduire	12
exclure	11	omettre	36	recouvrir	16	sentir	44
extraire	60	ouïr	42	récrire	25	seoir	5
		ouvrir	16	recroître	19	servir	56
faillir	27			recueillir	20	sortir	44
faire	28	paître	43	recuire	12	souffrir	16
falloir	29	paraître	43	redevenir	62	soumettre	36
feindre	45	parcourir	15	redevoir	22	sourire	54
forclore	10	parfaire	28	redire	23	souscrire	25
forfaire	28	partir	44	redormir	24	soustraire	60
frîre	30	parvenir	62	réduire	12	soutenir	62
fuir	31	peindre	45	réélire	34	souvenir	62
		percevoir	52	refaire	28	subvenir	62
geindre	45	permettre	36	rejoindre	33	suffire	57
gésir	32	plaindre	17	relire	34	suivre	58
		plaie	46	remettre	36	surcroître	19
haïr	§208	pleuvoir	47	reluire	41	surfaire	28
		poindre	33	remoudre	37	surprendre	50
imboire	6	poursuivre	58	rendormir	24	surseoir	5
induire	12	pourvoir	48	renaître	40	survenir	62
inscrire	25	pouvoir	49	rentraire	60	survivre	64
instruire	12	prédire	13	renvoyer	26		
interdire	13	prendre	50	repâitre	43	taire	59
intervenir	62	prescrire	25	repartir	44	teindre	45
introduire	12	pressentir	44	repeindre	45	tenir	62
		prévaloir	61	repentir	44	traduire	12
joindre	33	prévenir	62	reprandre	50	traire	60
		prévoir	51	requérir	2	transcrire	25
lire	34	produire	12	résoudre	53	transmettre	36
luire	41	promettre	36	ressentir	44	tressaillir	4
		promouvoir	39	ressortir	44		
maintenir	62	proscrire	25	ressouvenir	62	vaincre	§210
malfaire	28	provenir	62	restreindre	45	valoir	61
maudire	35			reteindre	45	venir	62
méconnaître	43	quérir	2	retenir	62	vêtir	63
médire	13			retraire	60	vivre	64
méfaire	28	rapprendre	50	revaloir	61	voir	65
mentir	44	rasseoir	5			vouloir	66
méprendre	50						

INDEX.

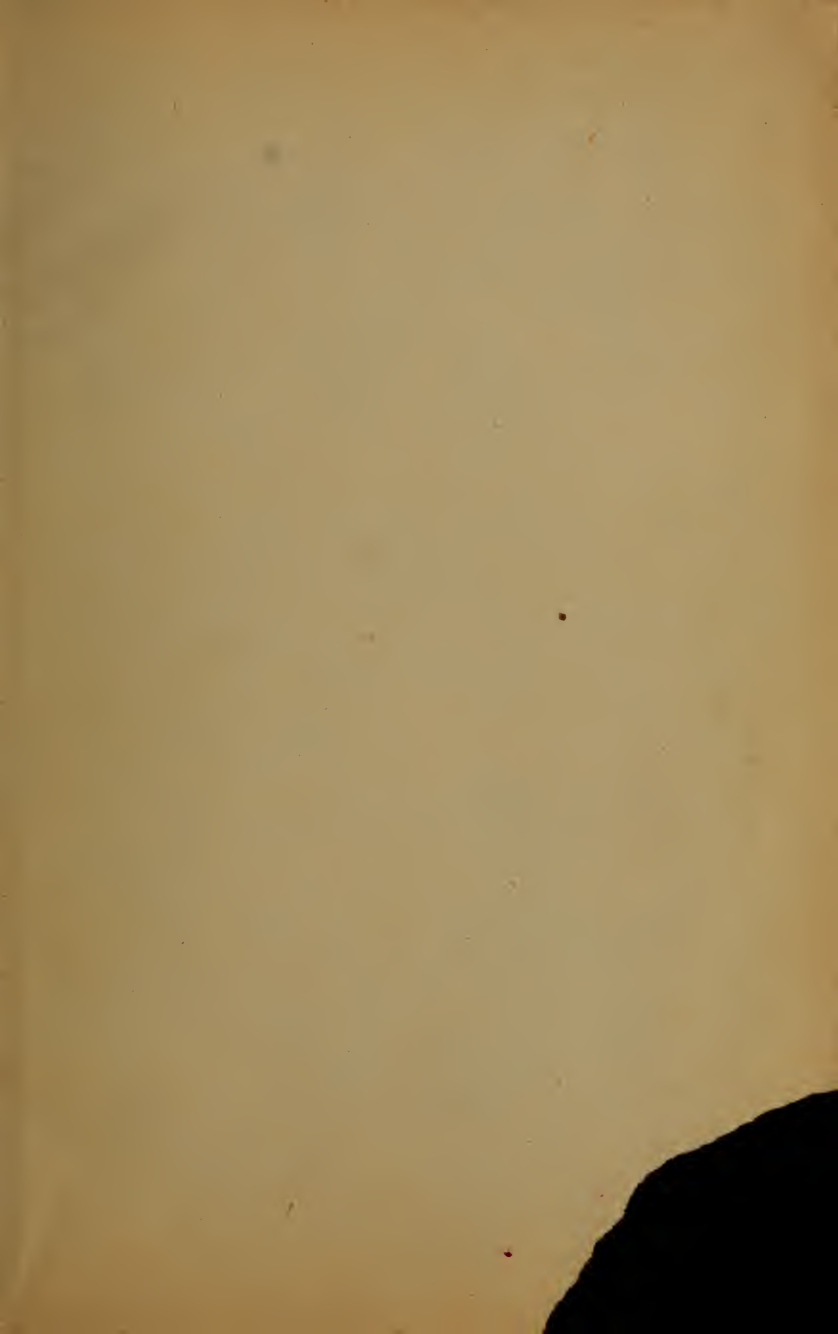
 The references are to sections, not to pages.

- accent of a word, 10.
 accent marks, 5-9:—*see also*
 acute, grave, and circumflex.
 acute accent, 5, 15-21.
 adjectives, 104-119; agreement
 of, 104; comparison of, 115-
 119; feminine of, 105-108;
 gender of, 104-109; modified
 by nouns with preposition,
 114; used as noun, 113;
 plural of, 109; position of,
 110-112; difference of mean-
 ing, 112c; used as adverbs,
 240.
 adverbs, 229-247; from ad-
 jectives, 235-238; adjectives
 used as, 240; comparison
 of, 238-9; position of, 234;
 of quantity, 92; of negation,
 241-247.
 alphabet, 1-3.
 apostrophe, 8: for *e* mute, 22c.
 articles, 75-84; indefinite, 79;
 omission of, 82; definite ar-
 ticle, gender of, 76-77; eli-
 sion of the vowel of, 78;
 contracted with *de* and *à*,
 83-84; with proper names,
 103; with superlative, 115a,
 119; used with partitive
 noun, 95-97; with abstract
 or inclusive nouns, 101; used
 instead of possessive, 150a.
 auxiliary verbs, 184, 195; of
 passives, 211a; of reflexives,
 217; *vouloir*, used as, 228.
 15b.
 capitals, use of, 3.
 cardinal numerals, 120-125;
 used for ordinals, 128.
 cedilla, 6.
 circumflex accent, 5.
 comparison, of adjectives, 115-
 119; of adverbs, 238-239.
 conjunctions, 255-257; follow-
 ed by subjunctive, 272; fol-
 lowed by *ne*, 247b; *que* used
 for other, 257.
 dates, expression of, 123a.
 dative case, represented by
 noun with *à*, 88; dative pro-
 nouns, 135-137; dative of
 characterization, 94.
 demonstratives, 153-158; dem.
 adjectives, 153-54; dem. pro-
 nouns, 155-158.
 diæresis 7.
 diphthongs, 28-33.
 division of syllables, 4.
 feminine, of nouns, 73; of ad-
 jectives, 105-108.
 first conjugation of verbs, 200;
 irregularities of, 201-206.

- fourth conjugation of verbs, sometimes so called, 198*a*.
- gender, of adjectives, 104-109; of articles, 76-77; of nouns, 72-73.
- genitive case, expressed by noun with *de*, 87; represented by *en*, 143-45; genitive of apposition, 93.
- gn*, pronunciation of, 49.
- grave accent, 5; with *e*, 15-21.
- h*, pronunciation of, 50.
- hyphen, 9; with numerals, 122*a*.
- imperative, 187*e*, 275; subjunctive used as, 188*b*.
- impersonal verbs, 222-226; agreement of participle in compound tenses of, 285*c*.
- inclusive sense of noun, 101-102.
- indefinite pronouns, 178-182.
- indicative mode, formation of tenses, 187; use of tenses of, 263-267.
- indirect object, pronoun forms for, 135-137; direct object made indirect, 261, 228. 6*b*. represented by *y*, 143:—*see also* dative.
- infinitive, 276-283; sign of, 189, 277-80; used as noun, 189*b*; after *aller*, 228. 1*b*; after *croire*, 228. 2; after *faire*, 228. 6*b*; after *venir*, 228. 13.
- interrogatives, adjectives, 159-60; pronouns, 161-66; form of interrog. sentence, 133, 192-93, 165; paraphrase for, 166.
- irregular verbs, 227-228; table of, 227; idiomatic uses of, 228; of first conjugation, 201-206.
- l*, liquid pronunciation of, 54. linking of final consonants (*liaison*), 68-70.
- masculine, *see* gender.
- material, expression of, 90.
- measure, expression of, 91-92.
- mute *e*, 14.
- nasal vowels, pronunciation of, 34-41.
- negative conjugation, 241-42; verb negated by *ne* alone, 243, 247; other negative expressions, 244-47; *sans* treated like a negative, 251.
- nouns, gender of, 72-73; plural of, 85; case relations expressed by *de*, 87, by *à*, 88; partitive noun, 95-100; inclusive noun, 101-102; proper nouns, 103.
- numerals, 120-129; cardinals, 120-125; ordinals, 126-129; cardinals for ordinals, 128; for fractionals, 129; plural of numerals, 121.
- object of verb, two direct objects not allowed, 137*b*, 261; verbs requiring *de* or *à* before object, 262; direct object after *pouvoir*, 228. 10:—*see also* indirect object.
- object-pronouns, 134; position of, 136-137.
- ordinals, 126-29.
- participles, present participle, 190, 284; with *en*, 190*c*; past participle, 191, 285; agreement with antecedent of relative, 168*b*.
- partitive sense of noun, 95-100; article omitted before, 97-98; represented by *en*, 145.
- passive verbs, 211-213; substitutes for, 214.

- personal pronouns, 130-145;
 conjunctive, 131-37; dis-
 junctive, 138-141; subject,
 132-33; object, 134-37; used
 in address, 132*a*; reflexive,
 142; *en* and *y*, 143-45; *le* as
 predicate after *être*, 140*e*.
 possessive case, *see* genitive.
 possessives, adjectives, 146-50;
 pronouns, 151-2; article used
 instead of, 150*a*.
 prepositions, 248-54; with in-
 finitive, 277-82.
 principal parts of verb, 199.
 pronouns, *see* personal, posses-
 sive, relative, etc.
 pronunciation. of names of let-
 ters, 2; of consonants, 42-67;
 of vowels, 11-41; of nasal
 vowels, 34-41.
 proper names, 103.
 reflexive verbs, 215-21; pro-
 nouns, 142.
 relative pronouns, 167-77;
 never omitted in French,
 176.
 second conjugation, 207-8.
 subject of verb, 258-60; agree-
 ment of verb with two sub-
 jects, 258; subject repeated
 by pronoun, 259; subj. of
 infinitive following *falloir*
 made indirect, 228. 7*b*; im-
 personal subj. with any verb,
 224.
 subject pronoun, 132-3; posi-
 tion of, 133; in interrog.
 sentence, 192; two pronoun
 subjects, 141.
 subjunctive mode, 188, 267-
 76; dependent on conjunc-
 tions, 272; on *falloir*, 228.
 7*a*; after *qui* . . . *que*, etc.,
 177; *ne* with dependent
 subj., 247*a*, *b*.
 superlative. use of article with,
 115*a*, 119*a*, *b*.
 tenses of indicative, 263-7.
 third regular conjugation, 209;
 irregularities of, 210.
 time, expressed by *il y a*, etc.,
 225*c*; time of day, expression
 of, 123*b*.
 transitive and intransitive
 verbs, 195, 262.
 verbs, simple forms of, 183,
 187; compound forms of,
 184-5; principal parts of,
 199; made negative, 241-47;
 three conjugations of, 198;
 irregular, 227-8:— *see also*
under auxiliaries, passive,
 reflexive, impersonal, names
 of modes, subject, etc.
 vowels, pronunciation of, 11-
 41.
 weather, *faire* with expres-
 sions of, 228. 6*a*; imper-
 sonal verbs of, 222.







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 128 410 7

